محاضرات في بحتة (4) "جبر مجرد اوهندسة فراغية"

لطلاب الفرقة الأولي – تعليم عام– شعبة الرياضيات

"برنامج اللغة الانجليزية" بكلية التربية

العام الجامعي ٢٠٢١ – ٢٠٢٢م

CHAPTER 1

Set Theory

1.1 INTRODUCTION

The concept of a *set* appears in all mathematics. This chapter introduces the notation and terminology of set theory which is basic and used throughout the text. The chapter closes with the formal definition of mathematical induction, with examples.

1.2 SETS AND ELEMENTS, SUBSETS

A *set* may be viewed as any well-defined collection of objects, called the *elements* or *members* of the set. One usually uses capital letters, $A, B, X, Y, \ldots$, to denote sets, and lowercase letters, $a, b, x, y, \ldots$, to denote elements of sets. Synonyms for "set" are "class," "collection," and "family."

Membership in a set is denoted as follows:

$a \in S$ denotes that a belongs to a set S

$a, b \in S$ denotes that a and b belong to a set S

Here $\in$ is the symbol meaning "is an element of." We use $\notin$ to mean "is not an element of."

Specifying Sets

There are essentially two ways to specify a particular set. One way, if possible, is to list its members separated by commas and contained in braces { }. A second way is to state those properties which characterized the elements in the set. Examples illustrating these two ways are:

$$A = \{1, 3, 5, 7, 9\} \quad \text{and} \quad B = \{x \mid x \text{ is an even integer, } x > 0\}$$

That is, A consists of the numbers 1, 3, 5, 7, 9. The second set, which reads:

B is the set of x such that x is an even integer and x is greater than 0,

denotes the set B whose elements are the positive integers. Note that a letter, usually x, is used to denote a typical member of the set; and the vertical line | is read as "such that" and the comma as "and."

EXAMPLE 1.1

(a) The set A above can also be written as $A = \{x \mid x \text{ is an odd positive integer, } x < 10\}$.

(b) We cannot list all the elements of the above set B although frequently we specify the set by

$$B = \{2, 4, 6, \ldots\}$$

where we assume that everyone knows what we mean. Observe that $8 \in B$, but $3 \notin B$.

(c) Let $E = \{x \mid x^2 - 3x + 2 = 0\}$, $F = \{2, 1\}$ and $G = \{1, 2, 2, 1\}$. Then $E = F = G$.

We emphasize that a set does not depend on the way in which its elements are displayed. A set remains the same if its elements are repeated or rearranged.

Even if we can list the elements of a set, it may not be practical to do so. That is, we describe a set by listing its elements only if the set contains a few elements; otherwise we describe a set by the property which characterizes its elements.

Subsets

Suppose every element in a set A is also an element of a set B, that is, suppose $a \in A$ implies $a \in B$. Then A is called a *subset* of B. We also say that A is *contained* in B or that B *contains* A. This relationship is written

$$A \subseteq B \quad \text{or} \quad B \supseteq A$$

Two sets are equal if they both have the same elements or, equivalently, if each is contained in the other. That is:

$$A = B \text{ if and only if } A \subseteq B \text{ and } B \subseteq A$$

If A is not a subset of B, that is, if at least one element of A does not belong to B, we write $A \not\subseteq B$.

EXAMPLE 1.2 Consider the sets:

$$A = \{1, 3, 4, 7, 8, 9\}, \quad B = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}, \quad C = \{1, 3\}.$$

Then $C \subseteq A$ and $C \subseteq B$ since 1 and 3, the elements of C, are also members of A and B. But $B \not\subseteq A$ since some of the elements of B, e.g., 2 and 5, do not belong to A. Similarly, $A \not\subseteq B$.

Property 1: It is common practice in mathematics to put a vertical line "|" or slanted line "/" through a symbol to indicate the opposite or negative meaning of a symbol.

Property 2: The statement $A \subseteq B$ does not exclude the possibility that $A = B$. In fact, for every set A we have $A \subseteq A$ since, trivially, every element in A belongs to A. However, if $A \subseteq B$ and $A \neq B$, then we say A is a proper subset of B (sometimes written $A \subset B$).

Property 3: Suppose every element of a set A belongs to a set B and every element of B belongs to a set C. Then clearly every element of A also belongs to C. In other words, if $A \subseteq B$ and $B \subseteq C$, then $A \subseteq C$.

The above remarks yield the following theorem.

Theorem 1.1: Let A, B, C be any sets. Then:

(i) $A \subseteq A$

(ii) If $A \subseteq B$ and $B \subseteq A$, then $A = B$

(iii) If $A \subseteq B$ and $B \subseteq C$, then $A \subseteq C$

Special symbols

Some sets will occur very often in the text, and so we use special symbols for them. Some such symbols are:

$\mathbf{N}$ = the set of *natural numbers* or positive integers: $1, 2, 3, \ldots$
$\mathbf{Z}$ = the set of all integers: $\ldots, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, \ldots$
$\mathbf{Q}$ = the set of rational numbers
$\mathbf{R}$ = the set of real numbers
$\mathbf{C}$ = the set of complex numbers

Observe that $\mathbf{N} \subseteq \mathbf{Z} \subseteq \mathbf{Q} \subseteq \mathbf{R} \subseteq \mathbf{C}$.

Universal Set, Empty Set

All sets under investigation in any application of set theory are assumed to belong to some fixed large set called the *universal set* which we denote by

$$\mathbf{U}$$

unless otherwise stated or implied.

Given a universal set **U** and a property P, there may not be any elements of **U** which have property P. For example, the following set has no elements:

$$S = \{x \mid x \text{ is a positive integer, } x^2 = 3\}$$

Such a set with no elements is called the *empty set* or *null set* and is denoted by

$$\emptyset$$

There is only one empty set. That is, if S and T are both empty, then $S = T$, since they have exactly the same elements, namely, none.

The empty set $\emptyset$ is also regarded as a subset of every other set. Thus we have the following simple result which we state formally.

Theorem 1.2: For any set A, we have $\emptyset \subseteq A \subseteq \mathbf{U}$.

Disjoint Sets

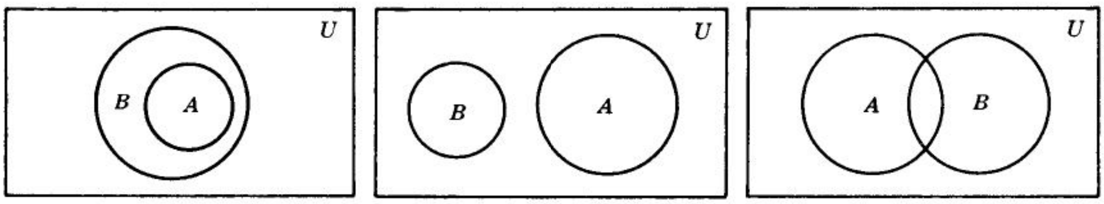
Two sets A and B are said to be *disjoint* if they have no elements in common. For example, suppose

$$A = \{1, 2\}, \quad B = \{4, 5, 6\}, \quad \text{and} \quad C = \{5, 6, 7, 8\}$$

Then A and B are disjoint, and A and C are disjoint. But B and C are not disjoint since B and C have elements in common, e.g., 5 and 6. We note that if A and B are disjoint, then neither is a subset of the other (unless one is the empty set).

1.3 VENN DIAGRAMS

A Venn diagram is a pictorial representation of sets in which sets are represented by enclosed areas in the plane. The universal set **U** is represented by the interior of a rectangle, and the other sets are represented by disks lying within the rectangle. If $A \subseteq B$, then the disk representing A will be entirely within the disk representing B as in Fig. 1-1(a). If A and B are disjoint, then the disk representing A will be separated from the disk representing B as in Fig. 1-1(b).



(a) $A \subseteq B$ (b) A and B are disjoint (c)

Fig. 1-1

However, if A and B are two arbitrary sets, it is possible that some objects are in A but not in B, some are in B but not in A, some are in both A and B, and some are in neither A nor B; hence in general we represent A and B as in Fig. 1-1(c).

Arguments and Venn Diagrams

Many verbal statements are essentially statements about sets and can therefore be described by Venn diagrams. Hence Venn diagrams can sometimes be used to determine whether or not an argument is valid.

EXAMPLE 1.3 Show that the following argument (adapted from a book on logic by Lewis Carroll, the author of *Alice in Wonderland*) is valid:

S_1: All my tin objects are saucepans.
S_2: I find all your presents very useful.
S_3: None of my saucepans is of the slightest use.

S : Your presents to me are not made of tin.

The statements S_1, S_2, and S_3 above the horizontal line denote the assumptions, and the statement S below the line denotes the conclusion. The argument is valid if the conclusion S follows logically from the assumptions S_1, S_2, and S_3.

By S_1 the tin objects are contained in the set of saucepans, and by S_3 the set of saucepans and the set of useful things are disjoint. Furthermore, by S_2 the set of "your presents" is a subset of the set of useful things. Accordingly, we can draw the Venn diagram in Fig. 1-2.

The conclusion is clearly valid by the Venn diagram because the set of "your presents" is disjoint from the set of tin objects.

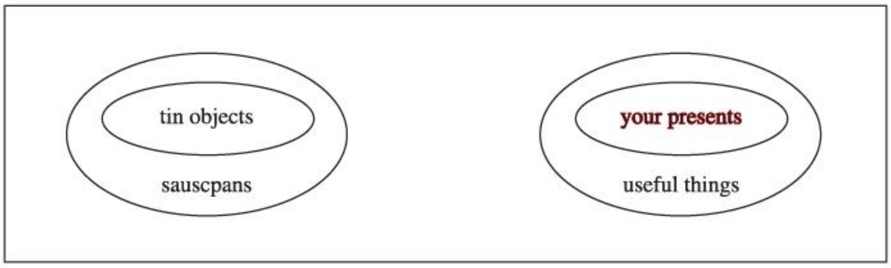


Fig. 1-2

1.4 SET OPERATIONS

This section introduces a number of set operations, including the basic operations of union, intersection, and complement.

Union and Intersection

The *union* of two sets A and B, denoted by $A \cup B$, is the set of all elements which belong to A or to B; that is,

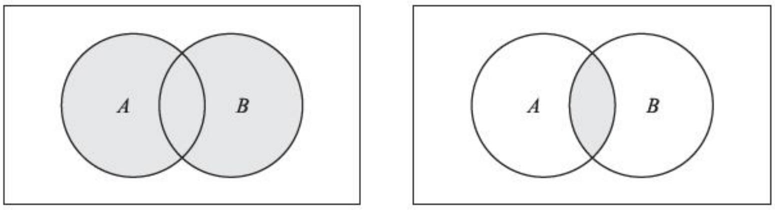
$$A \cup B = \{x \mid x \in A \text{ or } x \in B\}$$

Here "or" is used in the sense of and/or. Figure 1-3(a) is a Venn diagram in which $A \cup B$ is shaded.

The *intersection* of two sets A and B, denoted by $A \cap B$, is the set of elements which belong to both A and B; that is,

$$A \cap B = \{x \mid x \in A \text{ and } x \in B\}$$

Figure 1-3(b) is a Venn diagram in which $A \cap B$ is shaded.



(*a*) $A \cup B$ is shaded (*b*) $A \cap B$ is shaded

Fig. 1-3

Recall that sets A and B are said to be *disjoint* or *nonintersecting* if they have no elements in common or, using the definition of intersection, if $A \cap B = \emptyset$, the empty set. Suppose

$$S = A \cup B \quad \text{and} \quad A \cap B = \emptyset$$

Then S is called the *disjoint union* of A and B.

EXAMPLE 1.4

(a) Let $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$, $B = \{3, 4, 5, 6, 7\}$, $C = \{2, 3, 8, 9\}$. Then

$$A \cup B = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7\}, \quad A \cup C = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 8, 9\}, \quad B \cup C = \{2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9\},$$
$$A \cap B = \{3, 4\}, \quad A \cap C = \{2, 3\}, \quad B \cap C = \{3\}.$$

(b) Let **U** be the set of students at a university, and let M denote the set of male students and let F denote the set of female students. The **U** is the disjoint union of M of F; that is,

$$\mathbf{U} = M \cup F \quad \text{and} \quad M \cap F = \emptyset$$

This comes from the fact that every student in **U** is either in M or in F, and clearly no student belongs to both M and F, that is, M and F are disjoint.

The following properties of union and intersection should be noted.

Property 1: Every element x in $A \cap B$ belongs to both A and B; hence x belongs to A and x belongs to B. Thus $A \cap B$ is a subset of A and of B; namely

$$A \cap B \subseteq A \quad \text{and} \quad A \cap B \subseteq B$$

Property 2: An element x belongs to the union $A \cup B$ if x belongs to A or x belongs to B; hence every element in A belongs to $A \cup B$, and every element in B belongs to $A \cup B$. That is,

$$A \subseteq A \cup B \quad \text{and} \quad B \subseteq A \cup B$$

We state the above results formally:

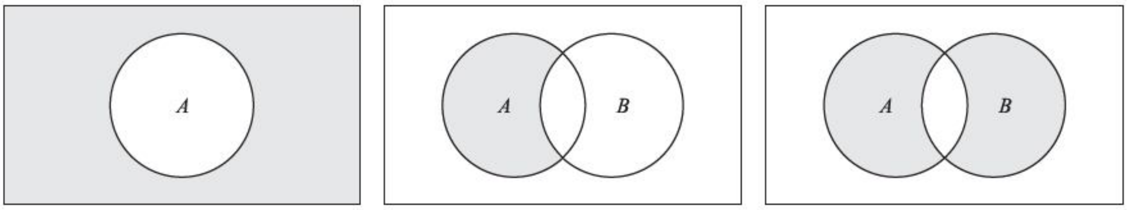
Theorem 1.3: For any sets A and B, we have:

(i) $A \cap B \subseteq A \subseteq A \cup B$ and (ii) $A \cap B \subseteq B \subseteq A \cup B$.

The operation of set inclusion is closely related to the operations of union and intersection, as shown by the following theorem.

Theorem 1.4: The following are equivalent: $A \subseteq B$, $A \cap B = A$, $A \cup B = B$.

This theorem is proved in Problem 1.8. Other equivalent conditions to are given in Problem 1.31.



(*a*) A^C is shaded (*b*) $A\backslash B$ is shaded (*c*) $A \oplus B$ is shaded

Fig. 1-4

Complements, Differences, Symmetric Differences

Recall that all sets under consideration at a particular time are subsets of a fixed universal set **U**. The *absolute complement* or, simply, *complement* of a set A, denoted by A^C, is the set of elements which belong to **U** but which do not belong to A. That is,

$$A^C = \{x \mid x \in \mathbf{U}, x \notin A\}$$

Some texts denote the complement of A by A' or $\bar{A}$. Fig. 1-4(*a*) is a Venn diagram in which A^C is shaded.

The *relative complement* of a set B with respect to a set A or, simply, the *difference* of A and B, denoted by $A\backslash B$, is the set of elements which belong to A but which do not belong to B; that is

$$A\backslash B = \{x \mid x \in A, x \notin B\}$$

The set $A\backslash B$ is read "A minus B." Many texts denote $A\backslash B$ by $A - B$ or $A \sim B$. Fig. 1-4(*b*) is a Venn diagram in which $A\backslash B$ is shaded.

The *symmetric difference* of sets A and B, denoted by $A \oplus B$, consists of those elements which belong to A or B but not to both. That is,

$$A \oplus B = (A \cup B)\backslash(A \cap B) \quad \text{or} \quad A \oplus B = (A\backslash B) \cup (B\backslash A)$$

Figure 1-4(*c*) is a Venn diagram in which $A \oplus B$ is shaded.

EXAMPLE 1.5 Suppose $\mathbf{U} = \mathbf{N} = \{1, 2, 3, \ldots\}$ is the universal set. Let

$$A = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}, \quad B = \{3, 4, 5, 6, 7\}, \quad C = \{2, 3, 8, 9\}, \quad E = \{2, 4, 6, \ldots\}$$

(Here E is the set of even integers.) Then:

$$A^C = \{5, 6, 7, \ldots\}, \quad B^C = \{1, 2, 8, 9, 10, \ldots\}, \quad E^C = \{1, 3, 5, 7, \ldots\}$$

That is, E^C is the set of odd positive integers. Also:

$$\begin{array}{llll} A\backslash B = \{1, 2\}, & A\backslash C = \{1, 4\}, & B\backslash C = \{4, 5, 6, 7\}, & A\backslash E = \{1, 3\}, \\ B\backslash A = \{5, 6, 7\}, & C\backslash A = \{8, 9\}, & C\backslash B = \{2, 8, 9\}, & E\backslash A = \{6, 8, 10, 12, \ldots\}. \end{array}$$

Furthermore:

$$\begin{array}{ll} A \oplus B = (A\backslash B) \cup (B\backslash A) = \{1, 2, 5, 6, 7\}, & B \oplus C = \{2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9\}, \\ A \oplus C = (A\backslash C) \cup (B\backslash C) = \{1, 4, 8, 9\}, & A \oplus E = \{1, 3, 6, 8, 10, \ldots\}. \end{array}$$

Fundamental Products

Consider n distinct sets $A_1, A_2, \ldots, A_n$. A *fundamental product* of the sets is a set of the form

$$A_1^* \cap A_2^* \cap \ldots \cap A_n^* \quad \text{where} \quad A_i^* = A \quad \text{or} \quad A_i^* = A^C$$

We note that:

(i) There are $m = 2^n$ such fundamental products.
(ii) Any two such fundamental products are disjoint.
(iii) The universal set **U** is the union of all fundamental products.

Thus **U** is the disjoint union of the fundamental products (Problem 1.60). There is a geometrical description of these sets which is illustrated below.

EXAMPLE 1.6 Figure 1-5(a) is the Venn diagram of three sets A, B, C. The following lists the $m = 2^3 = 8$ fundamental products of the sets A, B, C:

$$P_1 = A \cap B \cap C, \quad P_3 = A \cap B^C \cap C, \quad P_5 = A^C \cap B \cap C, \quad P_7 = A^C \cap B^C \cap C,$$
$$P_2 = A \cap B \cap C^C, \quad P_4 = A \cap B^C \cap C^C, \quad P_6 = A^C \cap B \cap C^C, \quad P_8 = A^C \cap B^C \cap C^C.$$

The eight products correspond precisely to the eight disjoint regions in the Venn diagram of sets A, B, C as indicated by the labeling of the regions in Fig. 1-5(b).

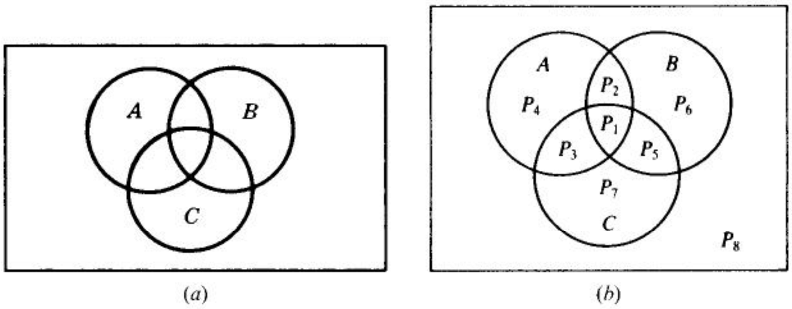


Fig. 1-5

1.5 ALGEBRA OF SETS, DUALITY

Sets under the operations of union, intersection, and complement satisfy various laws (identities) which are listed in Table 1-1. In fact, we formally state this as:

Theorem 1.5: Sets satisfy the laws in Table 1-1.

Table 1-1 Laws of the algebra of sets

Idempotent laws:	(1a) $A \cup A = A$	(1b) $A \cap A = A$
Associative laws:	(2a) $(A \cup B) \cup C = A \cup (B \cup C)$	(2b) $(A \cap B) \cap C = A \cap (B \cap C)$
Commutative laws:	(3a) $A \cup B = B \cup A$	(3b) $A \cap B = B \cap A$
Distributive laws:	(4a) $A \cup (B \cap C) = (A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C)$	(4b) $A \cap (B \cup C) = (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$
Identity laws:	(5a) $A \cup \emptyset = A$	(5b) $A \cap \mathbf{U} = A$
	(6a) $A \cup \mathbf{U} = \mathbf{U}$	(6b) $A \cap \emptyset = \emptyset$
Involution laws:	(7) $(A^C)^C = A$	
Complement laws:	(8a) $A \cup A^C = \mathbf{U}$	(8b) $A \cap A^C = \emptyset$
	(9a) $\mathbf{U}^C = \emptyset$	(9b) $\emptyset^C = \mathbf{U}$
DeMorgan's laws:	(10a) $(A \cup B)^C = A^C \cap B^C$	(10b) $(A \cap B)^C = A^C \cup B^C$

Remark: Each law in Table 1-1 follows from an equivalent logical law. Consider, for example, the proof of DeMorgan's Law 10(a):

$$(A \cup B)^{\mathrm{C}} = \{x \mid x \notin (A \text{ or } B)\} = \{x \mid x \notin A \text{ and } x \notin B\} = \mathrm{A^C} \cap \mathrm{B^C}$$

Here we use the equivalent (DeMorgan's) logical law:

$$\neg(p \vee q) = \neg p \wedge \neg q$$

where $\neg$ means "not," $\vee$ means "or," and $\wedge$ means "and." (Sometimes Venn diagrams are used to illustrate the laws in Table 1-1 as in Problem 1.17.)

Duality

The identities in Table 1-1 are arranged in pairs, as, for example, (2a) and (2b). We now consider the principle behind this arrangement. Suppose E is an equation of set algebra. The dual E^* of E is the equation obtained by replacing each occurrence of $\cup$, $\cap$, $\mathbf{U}$ and $\emptyset$ in E by $\cap$, $\cup$, $\emptyset$, and $\mathbf{U}$, respectively. For example, the dual of

$$(\mathbf{U} \cap A) \cup (B \cap A) = A \quad \text{is} \quad (\emptyset \cup A) \cap (B \cup A) = A$$

Observe that the pairs of laws in Table 1-1 are duals of each other. It is a fact of set algebra, called the *principle of duality*, that if any equation E is an identity then its dual E^* is also an identity.

1.6 FINITE SETS, COUNTING PRINCIPLE

Sets can be finite or infinite. A set S is said to be *finite* if S is empty or if S contains exactly m elements where m is a positive integer; otherwise S is *infinite*.

EXAMPLE 1.7

(a) The set A of the letters of the English alphabet and the set D of the days of the week are finite sets. Specifically, A has 26 elements and D has 7 elements.

(b) Let E be the set of even positive integers, and let $\mathbf{I}$ be the *unit interval*, that is,

$$E = \{2, 4, 6, \ldots\} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{I} = [0, 1] = \{x \mid 0 \le x \le 1\}$$

Then both E and $\mathbf{I}$ are infinite.

A set S is *countable* if S is finite or if the elements of S can be arranged as a sequence, in which case S is said to be *countably infinite*; otherwise S is said to be *uncountable*. The above set E of even integers is countably infinite, whereas one can prove that the unit interval $\mathbf{I} = [0, 1]$ is uncountable.

Counting Elements in Finite Sets

The notation $n(S)$ or $|S|$ will denote the number of elements in a set S. (Some texts use #(S) or card(S) instead of $n(S)$.) Thus $n(A) = 26$, where A is the letters in the English alphabet, and $n(D) = 7$, where D is the days of the week. Also $n(\emptyset) = 0$ since the empty set has no elements.

The following lemma applies.

Lemma 1.6: Suppose A and B are finite disjoint sets. Then $A \cup B$ is finite and

$$n(A \cup B) = n(A) + n(B)$$

This lemma may be restated as follows:

Lemma 1.6: Suppose S is the disjoint union of finite sets A and B. Then S is finite and

$$n(S) = n(A) + n(B)$$

Proof. In counting the elements of $A \cup B$, first count those that are in A. There are $n(A)$ of these. The only other elements of $A \cup B$ are those that are in B but not in A. But since A and B are disjoint, no element of B is in A, so there are $n(B)$ elements that are in B but not in A. Therefore, $n(A \cup B) = n(A) + n(B)$.

For any sets A and B, the set A is the disjoint union of $A \backslash B$ and $A \cap B$. Thus Lemma 1.6 gives us the following useful result.

Corollary 1.7: Let A and B be finite sets. Then

$$n(A \backslash B) = n(A) - n(A \cap B)$$

For example, suppose an art class A has 25 students and 10 of them are taking a biology class B. Then the number of students in class A which are not in class B is:

$$n(A \backslash B) = n(A) - n(A \cap B) = 25 - 10 = 15$$

Given any set A, recall that the universal set $\mathbf{U}$ is the disjoint union of A and A^{C}. Accordingly, Lemma 1.6 also gives the following result.

Corollary 1.8: Let A be a subset of a finite universal set $\mathbf{U}$. Then

$$n(A^{\mathrm{C}}) = n(\mathbf{U}) - n(A)$$

For example, suppose a class $\mathbf{U}$ with 30 students has 18 full-time students. Then there are $30 - 18 = 12$ part-time students in the class $\mathbf{U}$.

Inclusion–Exclusion Principle

There is a formula for $n(A \cup B)$ even when they are not disjoint, called the Inclusion–Exclusion Principle. Namely:

Theorem (Inclusion–Exclusion Principle) 1.9: Suppose A and B are finite sets. Then $A \cup B$ and $A \cap B$ are finite and

$$n(A \cup B) = n(A) + n(B) - n(A \cap B)$$

That is, we find the number of elements in A or B (or both) by first adding $n(A)$ and $n(B)$ (inclusion) and then subtracting $n(A \cap B)$ (exclusion) since its elements were counted twice.

We can apply this result to obtain a similar formula for three sets:

Corollary 1.10: Suppose A, B, C are finite sets. Then $A \cup B \cup C$ is finite and

$$n(A \cup B \cup C) = n(A) + n(B) + n(C) - n(A \cap B) - n(A \cap C) - n(B \cap C) + n(A \cap B \cap C)$$

Mathematical induction (Section 1.8) may be used to further generalize this result to any number of finite sets.

EXAMPLE 1.8 Suppose a list A contains the 30 students in a mathematics class, and a list B contains the 35 students in an English class, and suppose there are 20 names on both lists. Find the number of students: (a) only on list A, (b) only on list B, (c) on list A or B (or both), (d) on exactly one list.

(a) List A has 30 names and 20 are on list B; hence $30 - 20 = 10$ names are only on list A.

(b) Similarly, $35 - 20 = 15$ are only on list B.

(c) We seek $n(A \cup B)$. By inclusion–exclusion,

$$n(A \cup B) = n(A) + n(B) - n(A \cap B) = 30 + 35 - 20 = 45.$$

In other words, we combine the two lists and then cross out the 20 names which appear twice.

(d) By (a) and (b), $10 + 15 = 25$ names are only on one list; that is, $n(A \oplus B) = 25$.

1.7 CLASSES OF SETS, POWER SETS, PARTITIONS

Given a set S, we might wish to talk about some of its subsets. Thus we would be considering a *set of sets*. Whenever such a situation occurs, to avoid confusion, we will speak of a *class* of sets or *collection* of sets rather than a *set* of sets. If we wish to consider some of the sets in a given class of sets, then we speak of *subclass* or *subcollection*.

EXAMPLE 1.9 Suppose $S = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$.

(a) Let A be the class of subsets of S which contain exactly three elements of S. Then

$$A = [\{1, 2, 3\}, \{1, 2, 4\}, \{1, 3, 4\}, \{2, 3, 4\}]$$

That is, the elements of A are the sets $\{1, 2, 3\}$, $\{1, 2, 4\}$, $\{1, 3, 4\}$, and $\{2, 3, 4\}$.

(b) Let B be the class of subsets of S, each which contains 2 and two other elements of S. Then

$$B = [\{1, 2, 3\}, \{1, 2, 4\}, \{2, 3, 4\}]$$

The elements of B are the sets $\{1, 2, 3\}$, $\{1, 2, 4\}$, and $\{2, 3, 4\}$. Thus B is a subclass of A, since every element of B is also an element of A. (To avoid confusion, we will sometimes enclose the sets of a class in brackets instead of braces.)

Power Sets

For a given set S , we may speak of the class of all subsets of S. This class is called the *power set* of S , and will be denoted by $P(S)$. If S is finite, then so is $P(S)$. In fact, the number of elements in $P(S)$ is 2 raised to the power $n(S)$. That is,

$$n(P(S)) = 2^{n(S)}$$

(For this reason, the power set of S is sometimes denoted by 2^S.)

EXAMPLE 1.10 Suppose $S = \{1, 2, 3\}$. Then

$$P(S) = [\emptyset, \{1\}, \{2\}, \{3\}, \{1, 2\}, \{1, 3\}, \{2, 3\}, S]$$

Note that the empty set $\emptyset$ belongs to $P(S)$ since $\emptyset$ is a subset of S. Similarly, S belongs to $P(S)$. As expected from the above remark, $P(S)$ has $2^3 = 8$ elements.

Partitions

Let S be a nonempty set. A *partition* of S is a subdivision of S into nonoverlapping, nonempty subsets. Precisely, a *partition* of S is a collection $\{A_i\}$ of nonempty subsets of S such that:

(i) Each a in S belongs to one of the A_i.
(ii) The sets of $\{A_i\}$ are mutually disjoint; that is, if

$$A_j \neq A_k \quad \text{then} \quad A_j \cap A_k = \emptyset$$

The subsets in a partition are called *cells*. Figure 1-6 is a Venn diagram of a partition of the rectangular set S of points into five cells, A_1, A_2, A_3, A_4, A_5.

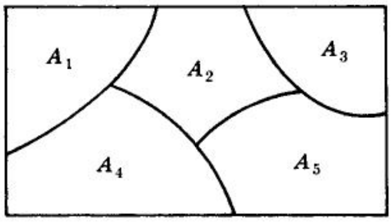


Fig. 1-6

EXAMPLE 1.11 Consider the following collections of subsets of $S = \{1, 2, \ldots, 8, 9\}$:

(i) $[\{1, 3, 5\}, \{2, 6\}, \{4, 8, 9\}]$

(ii) $[\{1, 3, 5\}, \{2, 4, 6, 8\}, \{5, 7, 9\}]$

(iii) $[\{1, 3, 5\}, \{2, 4, 6, 8\}, \{7, 9\}]$

Then (i) is not a partition of S since 7 in S does not belong to any of the subsets. Furthermore, (ii) is not a partition of S since $\{1, 3, 5\}$ and $\{5, 7, 9\}$ are not disjoint. On the other hand, (iii) is a partition of S.

Generalized Set Operations

The set operations of union and intersection were defined above for two sets. These operations can be extended to any number of sets, finite or infinite, as follows.

Consider first a finite number of sets, say, $A_1, A_2, \ldots, A_m$. The union and intersection of these sets are denoted and defined, respectively, by

$$A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \ldots \cup A_m = \bigcup_{i=1}^{m} A_i = \{x \mid x \in A_i \text{ for some } A_i\}$$
$$A_1 \cap A_2 \cap \ldots \cap A_m = \bigcap_{i=1}^{m} A_i = \{x \mid x \in A_i \text{ for every } A_i\}$$

That is, the union consists of those elements which belong to at least one of the sets, and the intersection consists of those elements which belong to all the sets.

Now let $\mathscr{A}$ be any collection of sets. The union and the intersection of the sets in the collection A is denoted and defined, respectively, by

$$\bigcup (A|A \in \mathscr{A}) = \{x \mid x \in A_i \text{ for some } A_i \in \mathscr{A}\}$$
$$\bigcap (A|A \in \mathscr{A}) = \{x \mid x \in A_i \text{ for every } A_i \in \mathscr{A}\}$$

That is, the union consists of those elements which belong to at least one of the sets in the collection $\mathscr{A}$ and the intersection consists of those elements which belong to every set in the collection A.

EXAMPLE 1.12 Consider the sets

$$A_1 = \{1, 2, 3, \ldots\} = \mathbf{N}, \quad A_2 = \{2, 3, 4, \ldots\}, \quad A_3 = \{3, 4, 5, \ldots\}, \quad A_n = \{n, n+1, n+2, \ldots\}.$$

Then the union and intersection of the sets are as follows:

$$\bigcup (A_k \mid k \in \mathbf{N}) = \mathbf{N} \quad \text{and} \quad \bigcap (A_k \mid k \in \mathbf{N}) = \emptyset$$

DeMorgan's laws also hold for the above generalized operations. That is:

Theorem 1.11: Let $\mathscr{A}$ be a collection of sets. Then:

(i) $\left[\bigcup (A \mid A \in \mathscr{A})\right]^{C} = \bigcap (A^{C} \mid A \in \mathscr{A})$

(ii) $\left[\bigcap (A \mid A \in \mathscr{A})\right]^{C} = \bigcup (A^{C} \mid A \in \mathscr{A})$

1.8 MATHEMATICAL INDUCTION

An essential property of the set $\mathbf{N} = \{1, 2, 3, \ldots\}$ of positive integers follows:

Principle of Mathematical Induction I: Let P be a proposition defined on the positive integers $\mathbf{N}$; that is, $P(n)$ is either true or false for each $n \in \mathbf{N}$. Suppose P has the following two properties:

(i) $P(1)$ is true.

(ii) $P(k+1)$ is true whenever $P(k)$ is true.

Then P is true for every positive integer $n \in \mathbf{N}$.

We shall not prove this principle. In fact, this principle is usually given as one of the axioms when $\mathbf{N}$ is developed axiomatically.

EXAMPLE 1.13 Let P be the proposition that the sum of the first n odd numbers is n^2; that is,

$$P(n): 1 + 3 + 5 + \cdots + (2n - 1) = n^2$$

(The kth odd number is $2k - 1$, and the next odd number is $2k + 1$.) Observe that $P(n)$ is true for $n = 1$; namely,

$$P(1) = 1^2$$

Assuming $P(k)$ is true, we add $2k + 1$ to both sides of $P(k)$, obtaining

$$1 + 3 + 5 + \cdots + (2k - 1) + (2k + 1) - k^2 + (2k + 1) = (k + 1)^2$$

which is $P(k + 1)$. In other words, $P(k + 1)$ is true whenever $P(k)$ is true. By the principle of mathematical induction, P is true for all n.

There is a form of the principle of mathematical induction which is sometimes more convenient to use. Although it appears different, it is really equivalent to the above principle of induction.

Principle of Mathematical Induction II: Let P be a proposition defined on the positive integers $\mathbf{N}$ such that:

(i) $P(1)$ is true.

(ii) $P(k)$ is true whenever $P(j)$ is true for all $1 \leq j < k$.

Then P is true for every positive integer $n \in \mathbf{N}$.

Remark: Sometimes one wants to prove that a proposition P is true for the set of integers

$$\{a, a + 1, a + 2, a + 3, \ldots\}$$

where a is any integer, possibly zero. This can be done by simply replacing 1 by a in either of the above Principles of Mathematical Induction.

Solved Problems

SETS AND SUBSETS

1.1 Which of these sets are equal: $\{x, y, z\}$, $\{z, y, z, x\}$, $\{y, x, y, z\}$, $\{y, z, x, y\}$?

They are all equal. Order and repetition do not change a set.

1.2 List the elements of each set where $\mathbf{N} = \{1, 2, 3, \ldots\}$.

(a) $A = \{x \in \mathbf{N} \mid 3 < x < 9\}$

(b) $B = \{x \in \mathbf{N} \mid x \text{ is even}, x < 11\}$

(*c*) $C = \{x \in \mathbf{N} \mid 4 + x = 3\}$

(*a*) A consists of the positive integers between 3 and 9; hence $A = \{4, 5, 6, 7, 8\}$.

(*b*) B consists of the even positive integers less than 11; hence $B = \{2, 4, 6, 8, 10\}$.

(*c*) No positive integer satisfies $4 + x = 3$; hence $C = \emptyset$, the empty set.

1.3 Let $A = \{2, 3, 4, 5\}$.

(*a*) Show that A is not a subset of $B = \{x \in \mathbf{N} \mid x \text{ is even}\}$.

(*b*) Show that A is a proper subset of $C = \{1, 2, 3, \ldots, 8, 9\}$.

(*a*) It is necessary to show that at least one element in A does not belong to B. Now $3 \in A$ and, since B consists of even numbers, $3 \notin B$; hence A is not a subset of B.

(*b*) Each element of A belongs to C so $A \subseteq C$. On the other hand, $1 \in C$ but $1 \notin A$. Hence $A \neq C$. Therefore A is a proper subset of C.

SET OPERATIONS

1.4 Let $\mathbf{U} = \{1,2, \ldots, 9\}$ be the universal set, and let

$$A = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}, \quad C = \{5, 6, 7, 8, 9\}, \quad E = \{2, 4, 6, 8\},$$
$$B = \{4, 5, 6, 7\}, \quad D = \{1, 3, 5, 7, 9\}, \quad F = \{1, 5, 9\}.$$

Find: (*a*) $A \cup B$ and $A \cap B$; (*b*) $A \cup C$ and $A \cap C$; (*c*) $D \cup F$ and $D \cap F$.

Recall that the union $X \cup Y$ consists of those elements in either X or Y (or both), and that the intersection $X \cap Y$ consists of those elements in both X and Y.

(*a*) $A \cup B = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7\}$ and $A \cap B = \{4, 5\}$

(*b*) $A \cup C = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9\} = \mathbf{U}$ and $A \cap C = \{5\}$

(*c*) $D \cup F = \{1, 3, 5, 7, 9\} = D$ and $D \cap F = (1, 5, 9) = F$

Observe that $F \subseteq D$, so by Theorem 1.4 we must have $D \cup F = D$ and $D \cap F = F$.

1.5 Consider the sets in the preceding Problem 1.4. Find:

(*a*) $A^{\mathrm{C}}, B^{\mathrm{C}}, D^{\mathrm{C}}, E^{\mathrm{C}}$; (*b*) $A \backslash B, B \backslash A, D \backslash E$; (*c*) $A \oplus B,\ C \oplus D,\ E \oplus F$.

Recall that:

(1) The complements X^{C} consists of those elements in $\mathbf{U}$ which do not belong to X.

(2) The difference $X \backslash Y$ consists of the elements in X which do not belong to Y.

(3) The symmetric difference $X \oplus Y$ consists of the elements in X or in Y but not in both.

Therefore:

(*a*) $A^{\mathrm{C}} = \{6, 7, 8, 9\}$; $B^{\mathrm{C}} = \{1, 2, 3, 8, 9\}$; $D^{\mathrm{C}} = \{2, 4, 6, 8\} = E$; $E^{\mathrm{C}} = \{1, 3, 5, 7, 9\} = D$.

(*b*) $A \backslash B = \{1, 2, 3\}$; $B \backslash A = \{6, 7\}$; $D \backslash E = \{1, 3, 5, 7, 9\} = D$; $F \backslash D = \emptyset$.

(*c*) $A \oplus B = \{1, 2, 3, 6, 7\}$; $C \oplus D = \{1, 3, 6, 8\}$; $E \oplus F = \{2, 4, 6, 8, 1, 5, 9\} = E \cup F$.

1.6 Show that we can have: (*a*) $A \cap B = A \cap C$ without $B = C$; (*b*) $A \cup B = A \cup C$ without $B = C$.

(*a*) Let $A = \{1, 2\}$, $B = \{2, 3\}$, $C = \{2, 4\}$. Then $A \cap B = \{2\}$ and $A \cap C = \{2\}$; but $B \neq C$.

(*b*) Let $A = \{1, 2\}$, $B = \{1, 3\}$, $C = \{2, 3\}$. Then $A \cup B = \{1, 2, 3\}$ and $A \cup C = \{1, 2, 3\}$ but $B \neq C$.

1.7 Prove: $B \backslash A = B \cap A^{\mathrm{C}}$. Thus, the set operation of difference can be written in terms of the operations of intersection and complement.

$$B \backslash A = \{x \mid x \in B,\ x \notin A\} = \{x \mid x \in B,\ x \in A^{\mathrm{C}}\} = B \cap A^{\mathrm{C}}.$$

1.8 Prove Theorem 1.4. The following are equivalent: $A \subseteq B$, $A \cap B = A$, $A \cup B = B$.

Suppose $A \subseteq B$ and let $x \in A$. Then $x \in B$, hence $x \in A \cap B$ and $A \subseteq A \cap B$. By Theorem 1.3, $(A \cap B) \subseteq A$. Therefore $A \cap B = A$. On the other hand, suppose $A \cap B = A$ and let $x \in A$. Then $x \in (A \cap B)$; hence $x \in A$ and $x \in B$. Therefore, $A \subseteq B$. Both results show that $A \subseteq B$ is equivalent to $A \cap B = A$.

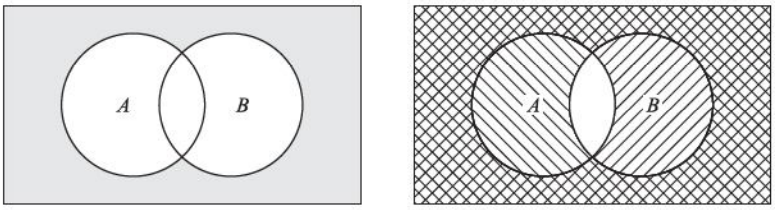
Suppose again that $A \subseteq B$. Let $x \in (A \cup B)$. Then $x \in A$ or $x \in B$. If $x \in A$, then $x \in B$ because $A \subseteq B$. In either case, $x \in B$. Therefore $A \cup B \subseteq B$. By Theorem 1.3, $B \subseteq A \cup B$. Therefore $A \cup B = B$. Now suppose $A \cup B = B$ and let $x \in A$. Then $x \in A \cup B$ by definition of the union of sets. Hence $x \in B = A \cup B$. Therefore $A \subseteq B$. Both results show that $A \subseteq B$ is equivalent to $A \cup B = B$.

Thus $A \subseteq B$, $A \cup B = A$ and $A \cup B = B$ are equivalent.

VENN DIAGRAMS, ALGEBRA OF SETS, DUALITY

1.9 Illustrate DeMorgan's Law $(A \cup B)^C = A^C \cap B^C$ using Venn diagrams.

Shade the area outside $A \cup B$ in a Venn diagram of sets A and B. This is shown in Fig. 1-7(*a*); hence the shaded area represents $(A \cup B)^C$. Now shade the area outside A in a Venn diagram of A and B with strokes in one direction (////), and then shade the area outside B with strokes in another direction (\\\\). This is shown in Fig. 1-7(*b*); hence the cross-hatched area (area where both lines are present) represents $A^C \cap B^C$. Both $(A \cup B)^C$ and $A^C \cap B^C$ are represented by the same area; thus the Venn diagram indicates $(A \cup B)^C = A^C \cap B^C$. (We emphasize that a Venn diagram is not a formal proof, but it can indicate relationships between sets.)



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 1-7

1.10 Prove the Distributive Law: $A \cap (B \cup C) = (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$.

$$\begin{aligned} A \cap (B \cup C) &= \{x \mid x \in A, x \in (B \cup C)\} \\ &= \{x \mid x \in A, x \in B \text{ or } x \in A, x \in C\} = (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C) \end{aligned}$$

Here we use the analogous logical law $p \wedge (q \vee r) \equiv (p \wedge q) \vee (p \wedge r)$ where $\wedge$ denotes "and" and $\vee$ denotes "or."

1.11 Write the dual of: (*a*) $(\mathbf{U} \cap A) \cup (B \cap A) = A$; (*b*) $(A \cap \mathbf{U}) \cap (\emptyset \cup A^C) = \emptyset$.

Interchange $\cup$ and $\cap$ and also $\mathbf{U}$ and $\emptyset$ in each set equation:

(*a*) $(\emptyset \cup A) \cap (B \cup A) = A$; (*b*) $(A \cup \emptyset) \cup (\mathbf{U} \cap A^C) = \mathbf{U}$.

1.12 Prove: $(A \cup B)\backslash(A \cap B) = (A\backslash B) \cup (B\backslash A)$. (Thus either one may be used to define $A \oplus B$.)

Using $X\backslash Y = X \cap Y^C$ and the laws in Table 1.1, including DeMorgan's Law, we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned} (A \cup B)\backslash(A \cap B) &= (A \cup B) \cap (A \cap B)^C = (A \cup B) \cap (A^C \cup B^C) \\ &= (A \cup A^C) \cup (A \cap B^C) \cup (B \cap A^C) \cup (B \cap B^C) \\ &= \emptyset \cup (A \cap B^C) \cup (B \cap A^C) \cup \emptyset \\ &= (A \cap B^C) \cup (B \cap A^C) = (A\backslash B) \cup (B\backslash A) \end{aligned}$$

1.13 Determine the validity of the following argument:

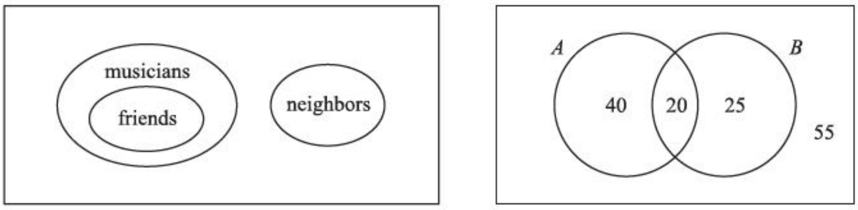
S_1: All my friends are musicians.

S_2: John is my friend.

S_3: None of my neighbors are musicians.

S : John is not my neighbor.

The premises S_1 and S_3 lead to the Venn diagram in Fig. 1-8(*a*). By S_2, John belongs to the set of friends which is disjoint from the set of neighbors. Thus S is a valid conclusion and so the argument is valid.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 1-8

FINITE SETS AND THE COUNTING PRINCIPLE

1.14 Each student in Liberal Arts at some college has a mathematics requirement A and a science requirement B. A poll of 140 sophomore students shows that:

60 completed A, 45 completed B, 20 completed both A and B.

Use a Venn diagram to find the number of students who have completed:

(*a*) At least one of A and B; (b) exactly one of A or B; (c) neither A nor B.

Translating the above data into set notation yields:

$n(A) = 60,\ n(B) = 45,\ n(A \cap B) = 20,\ n(\mathbf{U}) = 140$

Draw a Venn diagram of sets A and B as in Fig. 1-1(*c*). Then, as in Fig. 1-8(*b*), assign numbers to the four regions as follows:

20 completed both A and B, so $n(A \cap B) = 20$.

$60 - 20 = 40$ completed A but not B, so $n(A \backslash B) = 40$.

$45 - 20 = 25$ completed B but not A, so $n(B \backslash A) = 25$.

$140 - 20 - 40 - 25 = 55$ completed neither A nor B.

By the Venn diagram:

(*a*) $20 + 40 + 25 = 85$ completed A or B. Alternately, by the Inclusion–Exclusion Principle:

$$n(A \cup B) = n(A) + n(B) - n(A \cap B) = 60 + 45 - 20 = 85$$

(*b*) $40 + 25 = 65$ completed exactly one requirement. That is, $n(A \oplus B) = 65$.

(*c*) 55 completed neither requirement, i.e. $n(A^C \cap B^C) = n[(A \cup B)^C] = 140 - 85 = 55$.

1.15 In a survey of 120 people, it was found that:

65 read *Newsweek* magazine, 20 read both *Newsweek* and *Time*,
45 read *Time*, 25 read both *Newsweek* and *Fortune*,
42 read *Fortune*, 15 read both *Time* and *Fortune*,
8 read all three magazines.

(*a*) Find the number of people who read at least one of the three magazines.

(*b*) Fill in the correct number of people in each of the eight regions of the Venn diagram in Fig. 1-9(*a*) where N, T, and F denote the set of people who read *Newsweek*, *Time*, and *Fortune*, respectively.

(*c*) Find the number of people who read exactly one magazine.

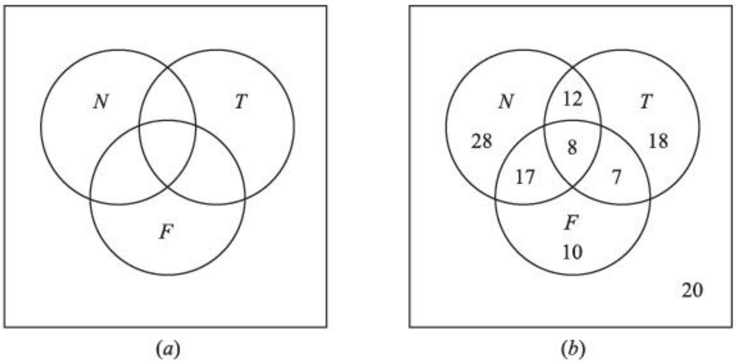


Fig. 1-9

(*a*) We want to find $n(N \cup T \cup F)$. By Corollary 1.10 (Inclusion–Exclusion Principle),

$$n(N \cup T \cup F) = n(N) + n(T) + n(F) - n(N \cap T) - n(N \cap F) - n(T \cap F) + n(N \cap T \cap F)$$
$$= 65 + 45 + 42 - 20 - 25 - 15 + 8 = 100$$

(*b*) The required Venn diagram in Fig. 1-9(*b*) is obtained as follows:

8 read all three magazines,

$20 - 8 = 12$ read *Newsweek* and *Time* but not all three magazines,

$25 - 8 = 17$ read *Newsweek* and *Fortune* but not all three magazines,

$15 - 8 = 7$ read *Time* and *Fortune* but not all three magazines,

$65 - 12 - 8 - 17 = 28$ read only *Newsweek*,

$45 - 12 - 8 - 7 = 18$ read only *Time*,

$42 - 17 - 8 - 7 = 10$ read only *Fortune*,

$120 - 100 = 20$ read no magazine at all.

(*c*) $28 + 18 + 10 = 56$ read exactly one of the magazines.

1.16 Prove Theorem 1.9. Suppose A and B are finite sets. Then $A \cup B$ and $A \cap B$ are finite and

$$n(A \cup B) = n(A) + n(B) - n(A \cap B)$$

If A and B are finite then, clearly, $A \cup B$ and $A \cap B$ are finite.

Suppose we count the elements in A and then count the elements in B.

Then every element in $A \cap B$ would be counted twice, once in A and once in B. Thus

$$n(A \cup B) = n(A) + n(B) - n(A \cap B)$$

CLASSES OF SETS

1.17 Let $A = [\{1, 2, 3\}, \{4, 5\}, \{6, 7, 8\}]$. (*a*) List the elements of A; (*b*) Find $n(A)$.

(*a*) A has three elements, the sets $\{1, 2, 3\}$, $\{4, 5\}$, and $\{6, 7, 8\}$.

(*b*) $n(A) = 3$.

1.18 Determine the power set $P(A)$ of $A = \{a, b, c, d\}$.

The elements of $P(A)$ are the subsets of A. Hence

$$P(A) = [A, \{a, b, c\}, \{a, b, d\}, \{a, c, d\}, \{b, c, d\}, \{a, b\}, \{a, c\}, \{a, d\}, \{b, c\}, \{b, d\}, \{c, d\}, \{a\}, \{b\}, \{c\}, \{d\}, \emptyset]$$

As expected, $P(A)$ has $2^4 = 16$ elements.

1.19 Let $S = \{a, b, c, d, e, f, g\}$. Determine which of the following are partitions of S:

(*a*) $P_1 = [\{a, c, e\}, \{b\}, \{d, g\}]$, (*c*) $P_3 = [\{a, b, e, g\}, \{c\}, \{d, f\}]$,
(*b*) $P_2 = [\{a, e, g\}, \{c, d\}, \{b, e, f\}]$, (*d*) $P_4 = [\{a, b, c, d, e, f, g\}]$.

(*a*) P_1 is not a partition of S since $f \in S$ does not belong to any of the cells.

(*b*) P_2 is not a partition of S since $e \in S$ belongs to two of the cells.

(*c*) P_3 is a partition of S since each element in S belongs to exactly one cell.

(*d*) P_4 is a partition of S into one cell, S itself.

1.20 Find all partitions of $S = \{a, b, c, d\}$.

Note first that each partition of S contains either 1, 2, 3, or 4 distinct cells. The partitions are as follows:

(1) $[\{a, b, c, d\}]$

(2) $[\{a\}, \{b, c, d\}]$, $[\{b\}, \{a, c, d\}]$, $[\{c\}, \{a, b, d\}]$, $[\{d\}, \{a, b, c\}]$,
$[\{a, b\}, \{c, d\}]$, $[\{a, c\}, \{b, d\}]$, $[\{a, d\}, \{b, c\}]$

(3) $[\{a\}, \{b\}, \{c, d\}]$, $[\{a\}, \{c\}, \{b,d\}]$, $[\{a\}, \{d\}, \{b, c\}]$,
$[\{b\}, \{c\}, \{a, d\}]$, $[\{b\}, \{d\}, \{a, c\}]$, $[\{c\}, \{d\}, \{a, b\}]$

(4) $[\{a\}, \{b\}, \{c\}, \{d\}]$

There are 15 different partitions of S.

1.21 Let $\mathbf{N} = \{1, 2, 3, \ldots\}$ and, for each $n \in \mathbf{N}$, Let $A_n = \{n, 2n, 3n, \ldots\}$. Find:

(*a*) $A_3 \cap A_5$; (*b*) $A_4 \cap A_5$; (*c*) $\bigcup_{i \in Q} A_i$ where $Q = \{2, 3, 5, 7, 11, \ldots\}$ is the set of prime numbers.

(*a*) Those numbers which are multiples of both 3 and 5 are the multiples of 15; hence $A_3 \cap A_5 = A_{15}$.

(*b*) The multiples of 12 and no other numbers belong to both A_4 and A_6, hence $A_4 \cap A_6 = A_{12}$.

(*c*) Every positive integer except 1 is a multiple of at least one prime number; hence

$$\bigcup_{i \in Q} A_i = \{2, 3, 4, \ldots\} = \mathbf{N} \backslash \{1\}$$

1.22 Let $\{A_i \mid i \in I\}$ be an indexed class of sets and let $i_0 \in I$. Prove

$$\bigcap_{i \in I} A_i \subseteq A_{i_0} \subseteq \bigcup_{i \in I} A_i.$$

Let $x \in \bigcap_{i \in I} A_i$ then $x \in A_i$ for every $i \in I$. In particular, $x \in A_{i_0}$. Hence $\bigcap_{i \in I} A_i \subseteq A_{i_0}$. Now let $y \in A_{i_0}$. Since $i_0 \in I$, $y \in \bigcap_{i \in I} A_i$. Hence $A_{i_0} \subseteq \bigcup_{i \in I} A_i$.

1.23 Prove (De Morgan's law): For any indexed class $\{A_i \mid i \in I\}$, we have $\left(\bigcup_i A_i\right)^{\mathrm{C}} = \bigcap_i A_i^{\mathrm{C}}$.

Using the definitions of union and intersection of indexed classes of sets:

$$\begin{aligned}\left(\bigcup_i A_i\right)^{\mathrm{C}} &= \{x \mid x \notin \bigcup_i A_i\} = \{x \mid x \notin A_i \text{ for every } i\}\\ &= \{x \mid x \in A_i^{\mathrm{C}} \text{ for every } i\} = \bigcap_i A_i^{\mathrm{C}}\end{aligned}$$

MATHEMATICAL INDUCTION

1.24 Prove the proposition $P(n)$ that the sum of the first n positive integers is $\frac{1}{2}n(n+1)$; that is,

$$P(n) = 1 + 2 + 3 + \cdots + n = \tfrac{1}{2}n(n+1)$$

The proposition holds for $n = 1$ since:

$$P(1): 1 = \tfrac{1}{2}(1)(1+1)$$

Assuming $P(k)$ is true, we add $k+1$ to both sides of $P(k)$, obtaining

$$\begin{aligned}1 + 2 + 3 + \cdots + k + (k+1) &= \tfrac{1}{2}k(k+1) + (k+1)\\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}[k(k+1) + 2(k+1)]\\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}[(k+1)(k+2)]\end{aligned}$$

which is $P(k+1)$. That is, $P(k+1)$ is true whenever $P(k)$ is true. By the Principle of Induction, P is true for all n.

1.25 Prove the following proposition (for $n \geq 0$):

$$P(n): 1 + 2 + 2^2 + 2^3 + \cdots + 2^n = 2^{n+1} - 1$$

$P(0)$ is true since $1 = 2^1 - 1$. Assuming $P(k)$ is true, we add 2^{k+1} to both sides of $P(k)$, obtaining

$$1 + 2 + 2^2 + 2^3 + \cdots + 2^k + 2^{k+1} = 2^{k+1} - 1 + 2^{k+1} = 2(2^{k+1}) - 1 = 2^{k+2} - 1$$

which is $P(k+1)$. That is, $P(k+1)$ is true whenever $P(k)$ is true. By the principle of induction, $P(n)$ is true for all n.

Supplementary Problems

SETS AND SUBSETS

1.26 Which of the following sets are equal?

$$\begin{aligned}&A = \{x \mid x^2 - 4x + 3 = 0\}, \quad C = \{x \mid x \in \mathbf{N}, x < 3\}, \quad E = \{1, 2\}, \quad G = \{3, 1\},\\ &B = \{x \mid x^2 - 3x + 2 = 0\}, \quad D = \{x \mid x \in \mathbf{N}, x \text{ is odd}, x < 5\}, \quad F = \{1, 2, 1\}, \quad H = \{1, 1, 3\}.\end{aligned}$$

1.27 List the elements of the following sets if the universal set is $\mathbf{U} = \{a, b, c, \ldots, y, z\}$.

Furthermore, identify which of the sets, if any, are equal.

$A = \{x \mid x \text{ is a vowel}\}$, $C = \{x \mid x \text{ precedes } f \text{ in the alphabet}\}$,
$B = \{x \mid x \text{ is a letter in the word "little"}\}$, $D = \{x \mid x \text{ is a letter in the word "title"}\}$.

1.28 Let $A = \{1, 2, \ldots, 8, 9\}$, $B = \{2, 4, 6, 8\}$, $C = \{1, 3, 5, 7, 9\}$, $D = \{3, 4, 5\}$, $E = \{3, 5\}$.
Which of the these sets can equal a set X under each of the following conditions?

(a) X and B are disjoint. (c) $X \subseteq A$ but $X \not\subset C$.

(b) $X \subseteq D$ but $X \not\subset B$. (d) $X \subseteq C$ but $X \not\subset A$.

SET OPERATIONS

1.29 Consider the universal set $\mathbf{U} = \{1, 2, 3, \ldots, 8, 9\}$ and sets $A = \{1, 2, 5, 6\}$, $B = \{2, 5, 7\}$, $C = \{1, 3, 5, 7, 9\}$. Find:

(a) $A \cap B$ and $A \cap C$ (c) A^C and C^C (e) $A \oplus B$ and $A \oplus C$

(b) $A \cup B$ and $B \cup C$ (d) $A\backslash B$ and $A\backslash C$ (f) $(A \cup C)\backslash B$ and $(B \oplus C)\backslash A$

1.30 Let A and B be any sets. Prove:

(a) A is the disjoint union of $A\backslash B$ and $A \cap B$.

(b) $A \cup B$ is the disjoint union of $A\backslash B$, $A \cap B$, and $B\backslash A$.

1.31 Prove the following:

(a) $A \subseteq B$ if and only if $A \cap B^C = \emptyset$ (c) $A \subseteq B$ if and only if $B^C \subseteq A^C$

(b) $A \subseteq B$ if and only if $A^C \cup B = \mathbf{U}$ (d) $A \subseteq B$ if and only if $A\backslash B = \emptyset$

(Compare the results with Theorem 1.4.)

1.32 Prove the Absorption Laws: (a) $A \cup (A \cap B) = A$; (b) $A \cap (A \cup B) = A$.

1.33 The formula $A\backslash B = A \cap B^C$ defines the difference operation in terms of the operations of intersection and complement. Find a formula that defines the union $A \cup B$ in terms of the operations of intersection and complement.

VENN DIAGRAMS

1.34 The Venn diagram in Fig. 1-5(*a*) shows sets A, B, C. Shade the following sets:

(a) $A\backslash(B \cup C)$; (b) $A^C \cap (B \cup C)$; (c) $A^C \cap (C\backslash B)$.

1.35 Use the Venn diagram in Fig. 1-5(*b*) to write each set as the (disjoint) union of fundamental products:

(a) $A \cap (B \cup C)$; (b) $A^C \cap (B \cup C)$; (c) $A \cup (B\backslash C)$.

1.36 Consider the following assumptions:

S_1: All dictionaries are useful.

S_2: Mary owns only romance novels.

S_3: No romance novel is useful.

Use a Venn diagram to determine the validity of each of the following conclusions:

(a) Romance novels are not dictionaries.

(b) Mary does not own a dictionary.

(c) All useful books are dictionaries.

ALGEBRA OF SETS AND DUALITY

1.37 Write the dual of each equation:

(a) $A = (B^C \cap A) \cup (A \cap B)$

(b) $(A \cap B) \cup (A^C \cap B) \cup (A \cap B^C) \cup (A^C \cap B^C) = \mathbf{U}$

1.38 Use the laws in Table 1-1 to prove each set identity:

(a) $(A \cap B) \cup (A \cap B^C) = A$

(b) $A \cup B = (A \cap B^C) \cup (A^C \cap B) \cup (A \cap B)$

FINITE SETS AND THE COUNTING PRINCIPLE

1.39 Determine which of the following sets are finite:

(a) Lines parallel to the x axis. (c) Integers which are multiples of 5.

(b) Letters in the English alphabet. (d) Animals living on the earth.

1.40 Use Theorem 1.9 to prove Corollary 1.10: Suppose A, B, C are finite sets. Then $A \cup B \cup C$ is finite and

$$n(A \cup B \cup C) = n(A) + n(B) + n(C) - n(A \cap B) - n(A \cap C) - n(B \cap C) + n(A \cap B \cap C)$$

1.41 A survey on a sample of 25 new cars being sold at a local auto dealer was conducted to see which of three popular options, air-conditioning (A), radio (R), and power windows (W), were already installed. The survey found:

15 had air-conditioning (A),	5 had A and P,	
12 had radio (R),	9 had A and R,	3 had all three options.
11 had power windows (W),	4 had R and W,	

Find the number of cars that had: (a) only W; (b) only A; (c) only R; (d) R and W but not A; (e) A and R but not W; (f) only one of the options; (g) at least one option; (h) none of the options.

CLASSES OF SETS

1.42 Find the power set $P(A)$ of $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$.

1.43 Given $A = [\{a, b\}, \{c\}, \{d, e, f\}]$.

(a) List the elements of A. (b) Find $n(A)$. (c) Find the power set of A.

1.44 Suppose A is finite and $n(A) = m$. Prove the power set $P(A)$ has 2^m elements.

PARTITIONS

1.45 Let $S = \{1, 2, \ldots, 8, 9\}$. Determine whether or not each of the following is a partition of S:

(a) $[\{1, 3, 6\}, \{2, 8\}, \{5, 7, 9\}]$ (c) $[\{2, 4, 5, 8\}, \{1, 9\}, \{3, 6, 7\}]$

(b) $[\{1, 5, 7\}, \{2, 4, 8, 9\}, \{3, 5, 6\}]$ (d) $[\{1, 2, 7\}, \{3, 5\}, \{4, 6, 8, 9\}, \{3, 5\}]$

1.46 Let $S = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$. Determine whether or not each of the following is a partition of S:

(a) $P_1 = [\{1, 2, 3\}, \{1, 4, 5, 6\}]$ (c) $P_3 = [\{1, 3, 5\}, \{2, 4\}, \{6\}]$

(b) $P_2 = [\{1, 2\}, \{3, 5, 6\}]$ (d) $P_4 = [\{1, 3, 5\}, \{2, 4, 6, 7\}]$

1.47 Determine whether or not each of the following is a partition of the set **N** of positive integers:

(a) $[\{n \mid n > 5\}, \{n \mid n < 5\}]$; (b) $[\{n \mid n > 6\}, \{1, 3, 5\}, \{2, 4\}]$;

(c) $[\{n \mid n^2 > 11\}, \{n \mid n^2 < 11\}]$.

1.48 Let $[A_1, A_2, \ldots, A_m]$ and $[B_1, B_2, \ldots, B_n]$ be partitions of a set S.

Show that the following collection of sets is also a partition (called the *cross partition*) of S:

$$P = [A_i \cap B_j | i = 1, \ldots, m,\ j = 1, \ldots, n] \backslash \emptyset$$

Observe that we deleted the empty set $\emptyset$.

1.49 Let $S = \{1, 2, 3, \ldots, 8, 9\}$. Find the cross partition P of the following partitions of S:

$$P_1 = [\{1, 3, 5, 7, 9\}, \{2, 4, 6, 8\}] \quad \text{and} \quad P_2 = [\{1, 2, 3, 4\}, \{5, 7\}, \{6, 8, 9\}]$$

INDUCTION

1.50 Prove: $2 + 4 + 6 + \cdots + 2n = n(n + 1)$

1.51 Prove: $1 + 4 + 7 + \cdots + 3n - 2 = \frac{n(3n-1)}{2}$

1.52 Prove: $1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \cdots + n^2 = \frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}$

1.53 Prove: $\frac{1}{1\cdot 3} + \frac{1}{3\cdot 5} + \frac{1}{5\cdot 7} + \cdots + \frac{1}{(2n-1)(2n+1)} = \frac{n}{2n+1}$

1.54 Prove: $\frac{1}{1\cdot 5} + \frac{1}{5\cdot 9} + \frac{1}{9\cdot 13} + \cdots + \frac{1}{(4n-3)(4n+1)} = \frac{n}{4n+1}$

1.55 Prove $7^n - 2^n$ is divisible by 5 for all $n \in \mathbf{N}$

1.56 Prove $n^3 - 4n + 6$ is divisible by 3 for all $n \in \mathbf{N}$

1.57 Use the identity $1 + 2 + 3 + \cdots + n = n(n + 1)/2$ to prove that

$$1^3 + 2^3 + 3^3 + \cdots + n^3 = (1 + 2 + 3 + \cdots + n)^2$$

Miscellaneous Problems

1.58 Suppose $\mathbf{N} = \{1, 2, 3, \ldots\}$ is the universal set, and

$$A = \{n \mid n \le 6\}, \quad B = \{n \mid 4 \le n \le 9\}, \quad C = \{1, 3, 5, 7, 9\}, \quad D = \{2, 3, 5, 7, 8\}.$$

Find: (a) $A \oplus B$; (b) $B \oplus C$; (c) $A \cap (B \oplus D)$; (d) $(A \cap B) \oplus (A \cap D)$.

1.59 Prove the following properties of the symmetric difference:

(a) $(A \oplus B) \oplus C = A \oplus (B \oplus C)$ (Associative Law).

(b) $A \oplus B = B \oplus A$ (Commutative Law).

(c) If $A \oplus B = A \oplus C$, then $B = C$ (Cancellation Law).

(d) $A \cap (B \oplus C) = (A \cap B) \oplus (A \cap C)$ (Distributive Law).

1.60 Consider m nonempty distinct sets $A_1, A_2, \ldots, A_m$ in a universal set $\mathbf{U}$. Prove:

(a) There are 2^m fundamental products of the m sets.

(b) Any two fundamental products are disjoint.

(c) $\mathbf{U}$ is the union of all the fundamental products.

Answers to Supplementary Problems

1.26 $B = C = E = F$, $A = D = G = H$.

1.27 $A = \{a, e, i, o, u\}$, $B = D = \{l, i, t, e\}$, $C = \{a, b, c, d, e\}$.

1.28 (a) C and E; (b) D and E; (c) A, B, and D; (d) None.

1.29 (a) $A \cap B = \{2, 5\}$, $A \cap C = \{1, 5\}$;
(b) $A \cup B = \{1, 2, 5, 6, 7\}$, $B \cup C = \{1, 2, 3, 5, 7, 9\}$;
(c) $A^C = \{3, 4, 7, 8, 9\}$, $C^C = \{2, 4, 6, 8\}$;
(d) $A \backslash B = \{1, 6\}$, $A \backslash C = \{2, 6\}$;
(e) $A \oplus B = \{1, 6, 7\}$, $A \oplus C = \{2, 3, 6, 7, 9\}$;
(f) $(A \cup C) \backslash B = \{1, 3, 6, 9\}$, $(B \oplus C) \backslash A = \{3, 9\}$.

1.33 $A \cup B = (A^C \cap B^C)^C$.

1.34 See Fig. 1-10.

1.35 (a) $(A \cap B \cap C) \cup (A \cap B \cap C^C) \cup (A \cap B^C \cap C)$

(b) $(A^C \cap B \cap C^C) \cup (A^C \cap B \cap C) \cup (A^C \cap B^C \cap C)$

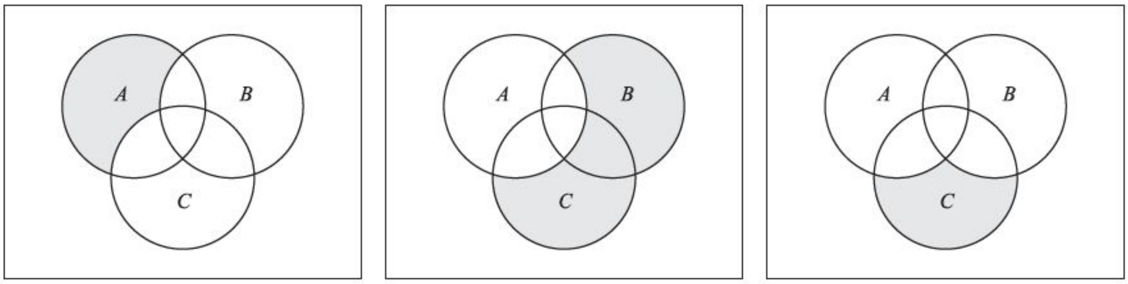
(c) $(A \cap B \cap C) \cup (A \cap B \cap C^C) \cup (A \cap B^C \cap C)$ $\cup (A^C \cap B \cap C^C) \cup (A \cap B^C \cap C^C)$

1.36 The three premises yield the Venn diagram in Fig. 1-11(a). (a) and (b) are valid, but (c) is not valid.

1.37 (a) $A = (B^C \cup A) \cap (A \cup B)$

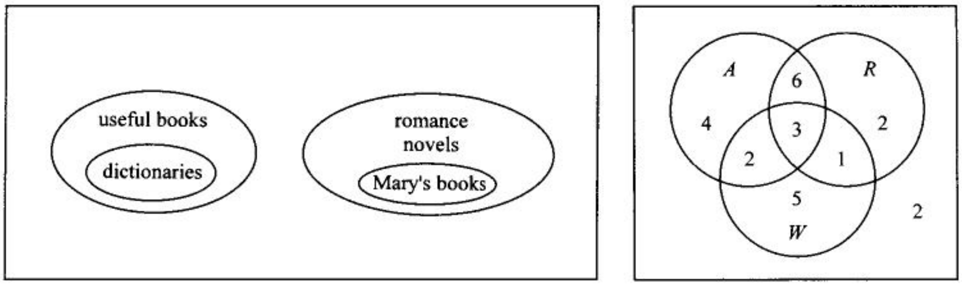
(b) $(A \cup B) \cap (A^C \cup B) \cap (A \cup B^C) \cap (A^C \cup B^C) = \emptyset$

1.39 (a) Infinite; (b) finite; (c) infinite; (d) finite.



(a) (b) (c)

Fig. 1-10



(a) (b)

Fig. 1-11

1.41 Use the data to fill in the Venn diagram in Fig. 1-11(b). Then:

(a) 5; (b) 4; (c) 2; (d) 1; (e) 6; (f) 11; (g) 23; (h) 2.

1.42 $P(A)$ has $2^5 = 32$ elements as follows:

$[\emptyset, \{1\}, \{2\}, \{3\}, \{4\}, \{5\}, \{1, 2\}, \{1, 3\}, \{1, 4\}, \{1, 5\}, \{2, 3\}, \{2, 4\}, \{2, 5\}, \{3, 4\}, \{3, 5\}, \{4, 5\}, \{1, 2, 3\}, \{1, 2, 4\}, \{1, 2, 5\}, \{2, 3, 4\}, \{2, 3, 5\}, \{3, 4, 5\}, \{1, 3, 4\}, \{1, 3, 5\}, \{1, 4, 5\}, \{2, 4, 5\}, \{1, 2, 3, 4\}, \{1, 2, 3, 5\}, \{1, 2, 4, 5\}, \{1, 3, 4, 5\}, \{2, 3, 4, 5\}, A]$

1.43 (a) Three elements: $[a, b]$, (c), and $\{d, e, f\}$. (b) 3. (c) $P(A)$ has $2^3 = 8$ elements as follows:

$$P(A) = \{A, [\{a, b\}, \{c\}], [\{a, b\}, \{d, e, f\}], [\{c\}, \{d, e, f\}], [\{a, b\}], [\{c\}], [\{d, e, f\}], \emptyset\}$$

1.44 Let X be an element in $P(A)$. For each $a \in A$, either $a \in X$ or $a \notin X$. Since $n(A) = m$, there are 2^m different sets X. That is $|P(A)| = 2^m$.

1.45 (a) No, (b) no, (c) yes, (d) yes.

1.46 (a) No, (b) no, (c) yes, (d) no.

1.47 (a) No, (b) no, (c) yes.

1.49 $[\{1,3\}, \{2,4\}, \{5,7\}, \{9\}, \{6,8\}]$

1.55 Hint: $7^{k+1} - 2^{k+1} = 7^{k+1} - 7(2^k) + 7(2^k) - 2^{k+1} = 7(7^k - 2^k) + (7 - 2)2^k$

1.58 (a) $\{1, 2, 3, 7, 8, 9\}$; (b) $\{1, 3, 4, 6, 8\}$; (c) and (d) $\{2, 3, 4, 6\}$.

CHAPTER 2

Relations

2.1 INTRODUCTION

The reader is familiar with many relations such as "less than," "is parallel to," "is a subset of," and so on. In a certain sense, these relations consider the existence or nonexistence of a certain connection between pairs of objects taken in a definite order. Formally, we define a relation in terms of these "ordered pairs."

An *ordered pair* of elements a and b, where a is designated as the first element and b as the second element, is denoted by (a, b). In particular,

$$(a, b) = (c, d)$$

if and only if $a = c$ and $b = d$. Thus $(a, b) \neq (b, a)$ unless $a = b$. This contrasts with sets where the order of elements is irrelevant; for example, $\{3, 5\} = \{5, 3\}$.

2.2 PRODUCT SETS

Consider two arbitrary sets A and B. The set of all ordered pairs (a, b) where $a \in A$ and $b \in B$ is called the *product*, or *Cartesian product*, of A and B. A short designation of this product is $A \times B$, which is read "A cross B." By definition,

$$A \times B = \{(a, b) \mid a \in A \text{ and } b \in B\}$$

One frequently writes A^2 instead of $A \times A$.

EXAMPLE 2.1 $\mathbf{R}$ denotes the set of real numbers and so $\mathbf{R}^2 = \mathbf{R} \times \mathbf{R}$ is the set of ordered pairs of real numbers. The reader is familiar with the geometrical representation of $\mathbf{R}^2$ as points in the plane as in Fig. 2-1. Here each point P represents an ordered pair (a, b) of real numbers and vice versa; the vertical line through P meets the x-axis at a, and the horizontal line through P meets the y-axis at b. $\mathbf{R}^2$ is frequently called the *Cartesian plane*.

EXAMPLE 2.2 Let $A = \{1, 2\}$ and $B = \{a, b, c\}$. Then

$$A \times B = \{(1, a),\ (1, b),\ (1, c),\ (2, a),\ (2, b),\ (2, c)\}$$
$$B \times A = \{(a, 1),\ (b, 1),\ (c, 1),\ (a, 2),\ (b, 2),\ (c, 2)\}$$

Also, $A \times A = \{(1, 1), (1, 2), (2, 1), (2, 2)\}$

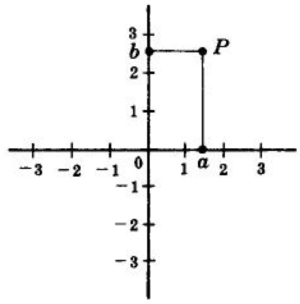


Fig. 2-1

There are two things worth noting in the above examples. First of all $A \times B \neq B \times A$. The Cartesian product deals with ordered pairs, so naturally the order in which the sets are considered is important. Secondly, using $n(S)$ for the number of elements in a set S, we have:

$$n(A \times B) = 6 = 2(3) = n(A)n(B)$$

In fact, $n(A \times B) = n(A)n(B)$ for any finite sets A and B. This follows from the observation that, for an ordered pair (a, b) in $A \times B$, there are $n(A)$ possibilities for a, and for each of these there are $n(B)$ possibilities for b.

The idea of a product of sets can be extended to any finite number of sets. For any sets $A_1, A_2, \ldots, A_n$, the set of all ordered n-tuples $(a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n)$ where $a_1 \in A_1, a_2 \in A_2, \ldots, a_n \in A_n$ is called the *product* of the sets $A_1, \ldots, A_n$ and is denoted by

$$A_1 \times A_2 \times \cdots \times A_n \quad \text{or} \quad \prod_{i=1}^{n} A_1$$

Just as we write A^2 instead of $A \times A$, so we write A^n instead of $A \times A \times \cdots \times A$, where there are n factors all equal to A. For example, $\mathbf{R}^3 = \mathbf{R} \times \mathbf{R} \times \mathbf{R}$ denotes the usual three-dimensional space.

2.3 RELATIONS

We begin with a definition.

Definition 2.1: Let A and B be sets. A *binary relation* or, simply, *relation* from A to B is a subset of $A \times B$.

Suppose R is a relation from A to B. Then R is a set of ordered pairs where each first element comes from A and each second element comes from B. That is, for each pair $a \in A$ and $b \in B$, exactly one of the following is true:

(i) $(a, b) \in R$; we then say "a is R-related to b", written aRb.
(ii) $(a, b) \notin R$; we then say "a is not R-related to b", written $a\not{R}b$.

If R is a relation from a set A to itself, that is, if R is a subset of $A^2 = A \times A$, then we say that R is a relation *on* A.

The *domain* of a relation R is the set of all first elements of the ordered pairs which belong to R, and the *range* is the set of second elements.

Although n-ary relations, which involve ordered n-tuples, are introduced in Section 2.10, the term relation shall then mean binary relation unless otherwise stated or implied.

EXAMPLE 2.3

(a) $A = (1, 2, 3)$ and $B = \{x, y, z\}$, and let $R = \{(1, y), (1, z), (3, y)\}$. Then R is a relation from A to B since R is a subset of $A \times B$. With respect to this relation,

$$1Ry, 1Rz, 3Ry, \quad \text{but} \quad 1\not{R}x, 2\not{R}x, 2\not{R}y, 2\not{R}z, 3\not{R}x, 3\not{R}z$$

The domain of R is $\{1, 3\}$ and the range is $\{y, z\}$.

(b) Set inclusion $\subseteq$ is a relation on any collection of sets. For, given any pair of set A and B, either $A \subseteq B$ or $A \not\subseteq B$.

(c) A familiar relation on the set **Z** of integers is "m divides n." A common notation for this relation is to write $m \mid n$ when m divides n. Thus $6 \mid 30$ but $7 \nmid 25$.

(d) Consider the set L of lines in the plane. Perpendicularity, written "$\perp$," is a relation on L. That is, given any pair of lines a and b, either $a \perp b$ or $a \not\perp b$. Similarly, "is parallel to," written "$\|$," is a relation on L since either $a \parallel b$ or $a \nparallel b$.

(e) Let A be any set. An important relation on A is that of *equality*,

$$\{(a, a) \mid a \in A\}$$

which is usually denoted by "$=$." This relation is also called the *identity* or *diagonal* relation on A and it will also be denoted by Δ_A or simply Δ.

(f) Let A be any set. Then $A \times A$ and $\emptyset$ are subsets of $A \times A$ and hence are relations on A called the *universal relation* and *empty relation*, respectively.

Inverse Relation

Let R be any relation from a set A to a set B. The *inverse* of R, denoted by R^{-1}, is the relation from B to A which consists of those ordered pairs which, when reversed, belong to R; that is,

$$R^{-1} = \{(b, a) \mid (a, b) \in R\}$$

For example, let $A = \{1, 2, 3\}$ and $B = \{x, y, z\}$. Then the inverse of

$$R = \{(1, y), (1, z), (3, y)\} \quad \text{is} \quad R^{-1} = \{(y, 1), (z, 1), (y, 3)\}$$

Clearly, if R is any relation, then $(R^{-1})^{-1} = R$. Also, the domain and range of R^{-1} are equal, respectively, to the range and domain of R. Moreover, if R is a relation on A, then R^{-1} is also a relation on A.

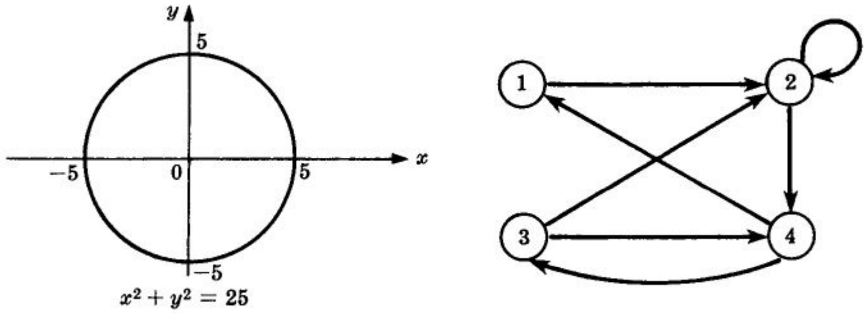
2.4 PICTORIAL REPRESENTATIVES OF RELATIONS

There are various ways of picturing relations.

Relations on R

Let S be a relation on the set **R** of real numbers; that is, S is a subset of $\mathbf{R}^2 = \mathbf{R} \times \mathbf{R}$. Frequently, S consists of all ordered pairs of real numbers which satisfy some given equation $E(x, y) = 0$ (such as $x^2 + y^2 = 25$).

Since $\mathbf{R}^2$ can be represented by the set of points in the plane, we can picture S by emphasizing those points in the plane which belong to S. The pictorial representation of the relation is sometimes called the *graph* of the relation. For example, the graph of the relation $x^2 + y^2 = 25$ is a circle having its center at the origin and radius 5. See Fig. 2-2(a).



(a) (b)

Fig. 2-2

Directed Graphs of Relations on Sets

There is an important way of picturing a relation R on a finite set. First we write down the elements of the set, and then we draw an arrow from each element x to each element y whenever x is related to y. This diagram is called the *directed graph* of the relation. Figure 2-2(b), for example, shows the directed graph of the following relation R on the set $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$:

$$R = \{(1, 2), (2, 2), (2, 4), (3, 2), (3, 4), (4, 1), (4, 3)\}$$

Observe that there is an arrow from 2 to itself, since 2 is related to 2 under R.

These directed graphs will be studied in detail as a separate subject in Chapter 8. We mention it here mainly for completeness.

Pictures of Relations on Finite Sets

Suppose A and B are finite sets. There are two ways of picturing a relation R from A to B.

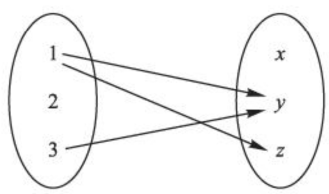
(i) Form a rectangular array (matrix) whose rows are labeled by the elements of A and whose columns are labeled by the elements of B. Put a 1 or 0 in each position of the array according as $a \in A$ is or is not related to $b \in B$. This array is called the *matrix of the relation*.

(ii) Write down the elements of A and the elements of B in two disjoint disks, and then draw an arrow from $a \in A$ to $b \in B$ whenever a is related to b. This picture will be called the *arrow diagram* of the relation.

Figure 2-3 pictures the relation R in Example 2.3(a) by the above two ways.

	x	y	z
1	0	1	1
2	0	0	0
3	0	1	0

(i)



(ii)

$R = \{(1, y),\ (1, z),\ (3, y)\}$

Fig. 2-3

2.5 COMPOSITION OF RELATIONS

Let A, B and C be sets, and let R be a relation from A to B and let S be a relation from B to C. That is, R is a subset of $A \times B$ and S is a subset of $B \times C$. Then R and S give rise to a relation from A to C denoted by $R \circ S$ and defined by:

$$a(R \circ S)c \text{ if for some } b \in B \text{ we have } aRb \text{ and } bSc.$$

That is ,

$$R \circ S = \{(a, c) \mid \text{there exists } b \in B \text{ for which } (a, b) \in R \text{ and } (b, c) \in S\}$$

The relation $R \circ S$ is called the *composition* of R and S; it is sometimes denoted simply by RS.

Suppose R is a relation on a set A, that is, R is a relation from a set A to itself. Then $R \circ R$, the composition of R with itself, is always defined. Also, $R \circ R$ is sometimes denoted by R^2. Similarly, $R^3 = R^2 \circ R = R \circ R \circ R$, and so on. Thus R^n is defined for all positive n.

Warning: Many texts denote the composition of relations R and S by $S \circ R$ rather than $R \circ S$. This is done in order to conform with the usual use of $g \circ f$ to denote the composition of f and g where f and g are functions. Thus the reader may have to adjust this notation when using this text as a supplement with another text. However, when a relation R is composed with itself, then the meaning of $R \circ R$ is unambiguous.

EXAMPLE 2.4 Let $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$, $B = \{a, b, c, d\}$, $C = \{x, y, z\}$ and let

$$R = \{(1, a), (2, d), (3, a), (3, b), (3, d)\} \quad \text{and} \quad S = \{(b, x), (b, z), (c, y), (d, z)\}$$

Consider the arrow diagrams of R and S as in Fig. 2-4. Observe that there is an arrow from 2 to d which is followed by an arrow from d to z. We can view these two arrows as a "path" which "connects" the element $2 \in A$ to the element $z \in C$. Thus:

$$2(R \circ S)z \quad \text{since } 2Rd \text{ and } dSz$$

Similarly there is a path from 3 to x and a path from 3 to z. Hence

$$3(R \circ S)x \quad \text{and} \quad 3(R \circ S)z$$

No other element of A is connected to an element of C. Accordingly,

$$R \circ S = \{(2, z), (3, x), (3, z)\}$$

Our first theorem tells us that composition of relations is associative.

Theorem 2.1: Let A, B, C and D be sets. Suppose R is a relation from A to B, S is a relation from B to C, and T is a relation from C to D. Then

$$(R \circ S) \circ T = R \circ (S \circ T)$$

We prove this theorem in Problem 2.8.

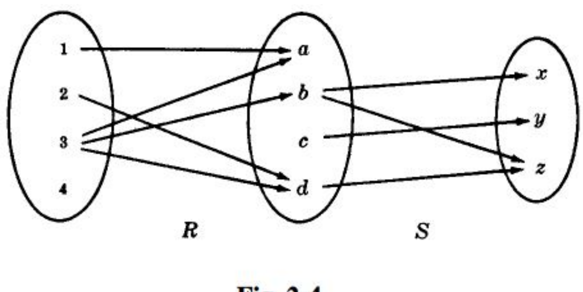


Fig. 2-4

Composition of Relations and Matrices

There is another way of finding $R \circ S$. Let M_R and M_S denote respectively the matrix representations of the relations R and S. Then

$$M_R = \begin{array}{c} \\ 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \\ 4 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{cccc} a & b & c & d \end{array} \\ \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \end{array} \quad \text{and} \quad M_S = \begin{array}{c} \\ a \\ b \\ c \\ d \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccc} x & y & z \end{array} \\ \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \end{array}$$

Multiplying M_R and M_S we obtain the matrix

$$M = M_R M_S = \begin{array}{c} \\ 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \\ 4 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccc} x & y & z \end{array} \\ \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \end{array}$$

The nonzero entries in this matrix tell us which elements are related by $R \circ S$. Thus $M = M_R M_S$ and $M_{R \circ S}$ have the same nonzero entries.

2.6 TYPES OF RELATIONS

This section discusses a number of important types of relations defined on a set A.

Reflexive Relations

A relation R on a set A is *reflexive* if aRa for every $a \in A$, that is, if $(a, a) \in R$ for every $a \in A$. Thus R is not reflexive if there exists $a \in A$ such that $(a, a) \notin R$.

EXAMPLE 2.5 Consider the following five relations on the set $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$:

$$R_1 = \{(1, 1), (1, 2), (2, 3), (1, 3), (4, 4)\}$$
$$R_2 = \{(1, 1)(1, 2), (2, 1), (2, 2), (3, 3), (4, 4)\}$$
$$R_3 = \{(1, 3), (2, 1)\}$$
$$R_4 = \emptyset, \text{ the empty relation}$$
$$R_5 = A \times A, \text{ the universal relation}$$

Determine which of the relations are reflexive.

Since A contains the four elements 1, 2, 3, and 4, a relation R on A is reflexive if it contains the four pairs $(1, 1)$, $(2, 2)$, $(3, 3)$, and $(4, 4)$. Thus only R_2 and the universal relation $R_5 = A \times A$ are reflexive. Note that R_1, R_3, and R_4 are not reflexive since, for example, $(2, 2)$ does not belong to any of them.

EXAMPLE 2.6 Consider the following five relations:

(1) Relation $\leq$ (less than or equal) on the set $\mathbf{Z}$ of integers.

(2) Set inclusion $\subseteq$ on a collection C of sets.

(3) Relation $\perp$ (perpendicular) on the set L of lines in the plane.

(4) Relation $\parallel$ (parallel) on the set L of lines in the plane.

(5) Relation $|$ of divisibility on the set $\mathbf{N}$ of positive integers. (Recall $x \mid y$ if there exists z such that $xz = y$.)

Determine which of the relations are reflexive.

The relation (3) is not reflexive since no line is perpendicular to itself. Also (4) is not reflexive since no line is parallel to itself. The other relations are reflexive; that is, $x \leq x$ for every $x \in \mathbf{Z}$, $A \subseteq A$ for any set $A \in C$, and $n \mid n$ for every positive integer $n \in \mathbf{N}$.

Symmetric and Antisymmetric Relations

A relation R on a set A is *symmetric* if whenever aRb then bRa, that is, if whenever $(a, b) \in R$ then $(b, a) \in R$. Thus R is not symmetric if there exists $a, b \in A$ such that $(a, b) \in R$ but $(b, a) \notin R$.

EXAMPLE 2.7

(a) Determine which of the relations in Example 2.5 are symmetric.

R_1 is not symmetric since $(1, 2) \in R_1$ but $(2, 1) \notin R_1$. R_3 is not symmetric since $(1, 3) \in R_3$ but $(3, 1) \notin R_3$. The other relations are symmetric.

(b) Determine which of the relations in Example 2.6 are symmetric.

The relation $\perp$ is symmetric since if line a is perpendicular to line b then b is perpendicular to a. Also, $\parallel$ is symmetric since if line a is parallel to line b then b is parallel to line a. The other relations are not symmetric. For example:

$$3 \leq 4 \text{ but } 4 \not\leq 3; \quad \{1, 2\} \subseteq \{1, 2, 3\} \text{ but } \{1, 2, 3\} \not\subseteq \{1, 2\}; \quad \text{and} \quad 2 \mid 6 \text{ but } 6 \nmid 2.$$

A relation R on a set A is *antisymmetric* if whenever aRb and bRa then $a = b$, that is, if $a \neq b$ and aRb then $b \not R a$. Thus R is not antisymmetric if there exist distinct elements a and b in A such that aRb and bRa.

EXAMPLE 2.8

(a) Determine which of the relations in Example 2.5 are antisymmetric.

R_2 is not antisymmetric since $(1, 2)$ and $(2, 1)$ belong to R_2, but $1 \neq 2$. Similarly, the universal relation R_3 is not antisymmetric. All the other relations are antisymmetric.

(b) Determine which of the relations in Example 2.6 are antisymmetric.

The relation $\leq$ is antisymmetric since whenever $a \leq b$ and $b \leq a$ then $a = b$. Set inclusion $\subseteq$ is antisymmetric since whenever $A \subseteq B$ and $B \subseteq A$ then $A = B$. Also, divisibility on $\mathbf{N}$ is antisymmetric since whenever $m \mid n$ and $n \mid m$ then $m = n$. (Note that divisibility on $\mathbf{Z}$ is not antisymmetric since $3 \mid -3$ and $-3 \mid 3$ but $3 \neq -3$.) The relations $\perp$ and $\parallel$ are not antisymmetric.

Remark: The properties of being symmetric and being antisymmetric are not negatives of each other. For example, the relation $R = \{(1, 3), (3, 1), (2, 3)\}$ is neither symmetric nor antisymmetric. On the other hand, the relation $R' = \{(1, 1), (2, 2)\}$ is both symmetric and antisymmetric.

Transitive Relations

A relation R on a set A is *transitive* if whenever aRb and bRc then aRc, that is, if whenever $(a, b), (b, c) \in R$ then $(a, c) \in R$. Thus R is not transitive if there exist $a, b, c \in R$ such that $(a, b), (b, c) \in R$ but $(a, c) \notin R$.

EXAMPLE 2.9

(a) Determine which of the relations in Example 2.5 are transitive.

The relation R_3 is not transitive since $(2, 1), (1, 3) \in R_3$ but $(2, 3) \notin R_3$. All the other relations are transitive.

(b) Determine which of the relations in Example 2.6 are transitive.

The relations $\leq$, $\subseteq$, and $|$ are transitive, but certainly not $\perp$. Also, since no line is parallel to itself, we can have $a \parallel b$ and $b \parallel a$, but $a \parallel a$. Thus $\parallel$ is not transitive. (We note that the relation "is parallel or equal to" is a transitive relation on the set L of lines in the plane.)

The property of transitivity can also be expressed in terms of the composition of relations. For a relation R on A we did define $R^2 = R \circ R$ and, more generally, $R^n = R^{n-1} \circ R$. Then we have the following result:

Theorem 2.2: A relation R is transitive if and only if, for every $n \geq 1$, we have $R^n \subseteq R$.

2.7 CLOSURE PROPERTIES

Consider a given set A and the collection of all relations on A. Let P be a property of such relations, such as being symmetric or being transitive. A relation with property P will be called a P-relation. The P-closure of an arbitrary relation R on A, written $P(R)$, is a P-relation such that

$$R \subseteq P(R) \subseteq S$$

for every P-relation S containing R. We will write

$$\text{reflexive}(R), \quad \text{symmetric}(R), \quad \text{and} \quad \text{transitive}(R)$$

for the reflexive, symmetric, and transitive closures of R.

Generally speaking, $P(R)$ need not exist. However, there is a general situation where $P(R)$ will always exist. Suppose P is a property such that there is at least one P-relation containing R and that the intersection of any P-relations is again a P-relation. Then one can prove (Problem 2.16) that

$$P(R) = \cap(S \mid S \text{ is a } P\text{-relation and } R \subseteq S)$$

Thus one can obtain $P(R)$ from the "top-down," that is, as the intersection of relations. However, one usually wants to find $P(R)$ from the "bottom-up," that is, by adjoining elements to R to obtain $P(R)$. This we do below.

Reflexive and Symmetric Closures

The next theorem tells us how to obtain easily the reflexive and symmetric closures of a relation. Here $\Delta_A = \{(a, a) \mid a \in A\}$ is the diagonal or equality relation on A.

Theorem 2.3: Let R be a relation on a set A. Then:

(i) $R \cup \Delta_A$ is the reflexive closure of R.

(ii) $R \cup R^{-1}$ is the symmetric closure of R.

In other words, reflexive(R) is obtained by simply adding to R those elements (a, a) in the diagonal which do not already belong to R, and symmetric(R) is obtained by adding to R all pairs (b, a) whenever (a, b) belongs to R.

EXAMPLE 2.10 Consider the relation $R = \{(1, 1), (1, 3), (2, 4), (3, 1), (3, 3), (4, 3)\}$ on the set $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$. Then

$$\text{reflexive}(R) = R \cup \{(2, 2), (4, 4)\} \quad \text{and} \quad \text{symmetric}(R) = R \cup \{(4, 2), (3, 4)\}$$

Transitive Closure

Let R be a relation on a set A. Recall that $R^2 = R \circ R$ and $R^n = R^{n-1} \circ R$. We define

$$R^* = \bigcup_{i=1}^{\infty} R^i$$

The following theorem applies:

Theorem 2.4: R^* is the transitive closure of R.

Suppose A is a finite set with n elements. We show in Chapter 8 on graphs that

$$R^* = R \cup R^2 \cup \ldots \cup R^n$$

This gives us the following theorem:

Theorem 2.5: Let R be a relation on a set A with n elements. Then

$$\text{transitive}\,(R) = R \cup R^2 \cup \ldots \cup R^n$$

EXAMPLE 2.11 Consider the relation $R = \{(1, 2), (2, 3), (3, 3)\}$ on $A = \{1, 2, 3\}$. Then:

$$R^2 = R \circ R = \{(1, 3), (2, 3), (3, 3)\} \quad \text{and} \quad R^3 = R^2 \circ R = \{(1, 3), (2, 3), (3, 3)\}$$

Accordingly,

$$\text{transitive}\,(R) = \{(1, 2), (2, 3), (3, 3), (1, 3)\}$$

2.8 EQUIVALENCE RELATIONS

Consider a nonempty set S. A relation R on S is an *equivalence relation* if R is reflexive, symmetric, and transitive. That is, R is an equivalence relation on S if it has the following three properties:

(1) For every $a \in S$, aRa. (2) If aRb, then bRa. (3) If aRb and bRc, then aRc.

The general idea behind an equivalence relation is that it is a classification of objects which are in some way "alike." In fact, the relation "=" of equality on any set S is an equivalence relation; that is:

(1) $a = a$ for every $a \in S$. (2) If $a = b$, then $b = a$. (3) If $a = b$, $b = c$, then $a = c$.

Other equivalence relations follow.

EXAMPLE 2.12

(a) Let L be the set of lines and let T be the set of triangles in the Euclidean plane.

  (i) The relation "is parallel to or identical to" is an equivalence relation on L.

  (ii) The relations of congruence and similarity are equivalence relations on T.

(b) The relation $\subseteq$ of set inclusion is not an equivalence relation. It is reflexive and transitive, but it is not symmetric since $A \subseteq B$ does not imply $B \subseteq A$.

(c) Let m be a fixed positive integer. Two integers a and b are said to be *congruent modulo m*, written

$$a \equiv b \pmod{m}$$

if m divides $a - b$. For example, for the modulus $m = 4$, we have

$$11 \equiv 3 \pmod{4} \quad \text{and} \quad 22 \equiv 6 \pmod{4}$$

since 4 divides $11 - 3 = 8$ and 4 divides $22 - 6 = 16$. This relation of congruence modulo m is an important equivalence relation.

Equivalence Relations and Partitions

This subsection explores the relationship between equivalence relations and partitions on a non-empty set S. Recall first that a partition P of S is a collection $\{A_i\}$ of nonempty subsets of S with the following two properties:

(1) Each $a \in S$ belongs to some A_i.
(2) If $A_i \neq A_j$ then $A_i \cap A_j = \emptyset$.

In other words, a partition P of S is a subdivision of S into disjoint nonempty sets. (See Section 1.7.)

Suppose R is an equivalence relation on a set S. For each $a \in S$, let [a] denote the set of elements of S to which a is related under R; that is:

$$[a] = \{x \mid (a, x) \in R\}$$

We call $[a]$ the *equivalence class* of a in S; any $b \in [a]$ is called a *representative* of the equivalence class.

The collection of all equivalence classes of elements of S under an equivalence relation R is denoted by S/R, that is,

$$S/R = \{[a] \mid a \in S\}$$

It is called the *quotient set* of S by R. The fundamental property of a quotient set is contained in the following theorem.

Theorem 2.6: Let R be an equivalence relation on a set S. Then S/R is a partition of S. Specifically:

(i) For each a in S, we have $a \in [a]$.
(ii) $[a] = [b]$ if and only if $(a, b) \in R$.
(iii) If $[a] \neq [b]$, then $[a]$ and $[b]$ are disjoint.

Conversely, given a partition $\{A_i\}$ of the set S, there is an equivalence relation R on S such that the sets A_i are the equivalence classes.

This important theorem will be proved in Problem 2.17.

EXAMPLE 2.13

(a) Consider the relation $R = \{(1, 1), (1, 2), (2, 1), (2, 2), (3, 3)\}$ on $S = \{1, 2, 3\}$.

One can show that R is reflexive, symmetric, and transitive, that is, that R is an equivalence relation. Also:

$$[1] = \{1, 2\}, [2] = \{1, 2\}, [3] = \{3\}$$

Observe that $[1] = [2]$ and that $S/R = \{[1], [3]\}$ is a partition of S. One can choose either $\{1, 3\}$ or $\{2, 3\}$ as a set of representatives of the equivalence classes.

(b) Let R_5 be the relation of congruence modulo 5 on the set **Z** of integers denoted by

$$x \equiv y \pmod 5$$

This means that the difference $x - y$ is divisible by 5. Then R_5 is an equivalence relation on **Z**. The quotient set $\mathbf{Z}/R_5$ contains the following five equivalence classes:

$$\begin{aligned} A_0 &= \{\ldots, -10, -5, 0, 5, 10, \ldots\} \\ A_1 &= \{\ldots, -9, -4, 1, 6, 11, \ldots\} \\ A_2 &= \{\ldots, -8, -3, 2, 7, 12, \ldots\} \\ A_3 &= \{\ldots, -7, -2, 3, 8, 13, \ldots\} \\ A_4 &= \{\ldots, -6, -1, 4, 9, 14, \ldots\} \end{aligned}$$

Any integer x, uniquely expressed in the form $x = 5q + r$ where $0 \le r < 5$, is a member of the equivalence class A_r, where r is the remainder. As expected, **Z** is the disjoint union of equivalence classes A_1, A_2, A_3, A_4. Usually one chooses $\{0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}$ or $\{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2\}$ as a set of representatives of the equivalence classes.

2.9 PARTIAL ORDERING RELATIONS

A relation R on a set S is called a *partial ordering* or a *partial order* of S if R is reflexive, antisymmetric, and transitive. A set S together with a partial ordering R is called a *partially ordered set* or *poset*. Partially ordered sets will be studied in more detail in Chapter 14, so here we simply give some examples.

EXAMPLE 2.14

(a) The relation $\subseteq$ of set inclusion is a partial ordering on any collection of sets since set inclusion has the three desired properties. That is,

(1) $A \subseteq A$ for any set A.

(2) If $A \subseteq B$ and $B \subseteq A$, then $A = B$.

(3) If $A \subseteq B$ and $B \subseteq C$, then $A \subseteq C$.

(b) The relation $\le$ on the set **R** of real numbers is reflexive, antisymmetric, and transitive. Thus $\le$ is a partial ordering on **R**.

(c) The relation "a divides b," written $a \mid b$, is a partial ordering on the set **N** of positive integers. However, "a divides b" is not a partial ordering on the set **Z** of integers since $a \mid b$ and $b \mid a$ need not imply $a = b$. For example, $3 \mid -3$ and $-3 \mid 3$ but $3 \ne -3$.

2.10 *n*-ARY RELATIONS

All the relations discussed above were binary relations. By an *n-ary relation*, we mean a set of ordered n-tuples. For any set S, a subset of the product set S^n is called an n-ary relation on S. In particular, a subset of S^3 is called a *ternary relation* on S.

EXAMPLE 2.15

(a) Let L be a line in the plane. Then "betweenness" is a ternary relation R on the points of L; that is, $(a, b, c) \in R$ if b lies between a and c on L.

(b) The equation $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 1$ determines a ternary relation T on the set **R** of real numbers. That is, a triple (x, y, z) belongs to T if (x, y, z) satisfies the equation, which means (x, y, z) is the coordinates of a point in $\mathbf{R}^3$ on the sphere S with radius 1 and center at the origin $O = (0, 0, 0)$.

Solved Problems

PRODUCT SETS

2.1. Given: $A = \{1, 2\}$, $B = \{x, y, z\}$, and $C = \{3, 4\}$. Find: $A \times B \times C$.

$A \times B \times C$ consists of all ordered triplets (a, b, c) where $a \in A$, $b \in B$, $c \in C$. These elements of $A \times B \times C$ can be systematically obtained by a so-called tree diagram (Fig. 2-5). The elements of $A \times B \times C$ are precisely the 12 ordered triplets to the right of the tree diagram.

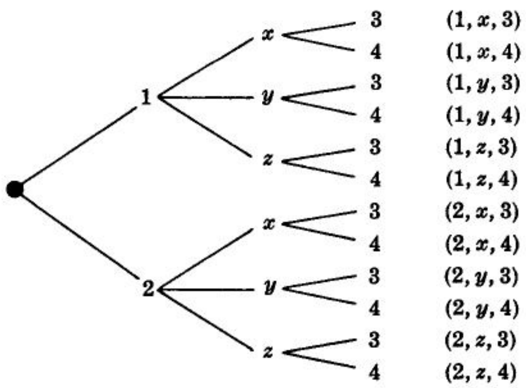


Fig. 2-5

Observe that $n(A) = 2$, $n(B) = 3$, and $n(C) = 2$ and, as expected,

$$n(A \times B \times C) = 12 = n(A) \cdot n(B) \cdot n(C)$$

2.2. Find x and y given $(2x, x + y) = (6, 2)$.

Two ordered pairs are equal if and only if the corresponding components are equal. Hence we obtain the equations

$$2x = 6 \quad \text{and} \quad x + y = 2$$

from which we derive the answers $x = 3$ and $y = -1$.

RELATIONS AND THEIR GRAPHS

2.3. Find the number of relations from $A = \{a, b, c\}$ to $B = \{1, 2\}$.

There are $3(2) = 6$ elements in $A \times B$, and hence there are $m = 2^6 = 64$ subsets of $A \times B$. Thus there are $m = 64$ relations from A to B.

2.4. Given $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ and $B = \{x, y, z\}$. Let R be the following relation from A to B:

$$R = \{(1, y), (1, z), (3, y), (4, x), (4, z)\}$$

(*a*) Determine the matrix of the relation.

(*b*) Draw the arrow diagram of R.

(*c*) Find the inverse relation R^{-1} of R.

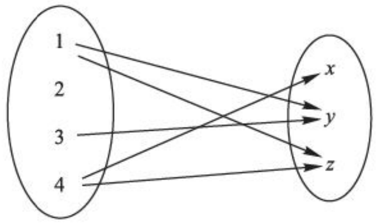
(*d*) Determine the domain and range of R.

(*a*) See Fig. 2-6(*a*) Observe that the rows of the matrix are labeled by the elements of A and the columns by the elements of B. Also observe that the entry in the matrix corresponding to $a \in A$ and $b \in B$ is 1 if a is related to b and 0 otherwise.

(*b*) See Fig. 2.6(*b*) Observe that there is an arrow from $a \in A$ to $b \in B$ iff a is related to b, i.e., iff $(a, b) \in R$.

$$\begin{array}{c} \\ 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \\ 4 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \begin{matrix} x & y & z \end{matrix} \\ \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \end{array}$$

(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 2-6

(*c*) Reverse the ordered pairs of R to obtain R^{-1}:

$$R^{-1} = \{(y, 1), (z, 1), (y, 3), (x, 4), (z, 4)\}$$

Observe that by reversing the arrows in Fig. 2.6(*b*), we obtain the arrow diagram of R^{-1}.

(*d*) The domain of R, $\text{Dom}(R)$, consists of the first elements of the ordered pairs of R, and the range of R, $\text{Ran}(R)$, consists of the second elements. Thus,

$$\text{Dom}(R) = \{1, 3, 4\} \quad \text{and} \quad \text{Ran}(R) = \{x, y, z\}$$

2.5. Let $A = \{1, 2, 3\}$, $B = \{a, b, c\}$, and $C = \{x, y, z\}$. Consider the following relations R and S from A to B and from B to C, respectively.

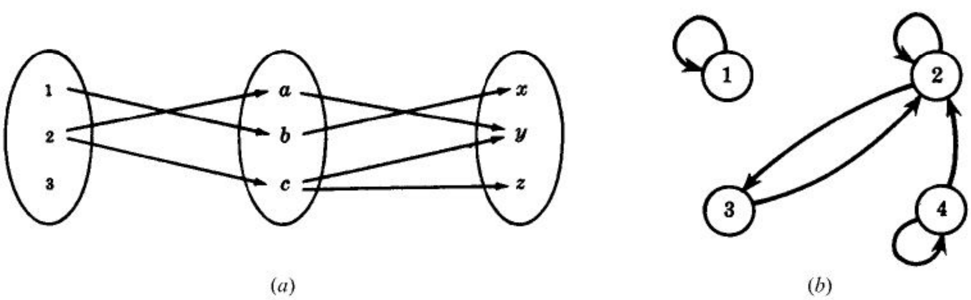
$$R = \{(1, b), (2, a), (2, c)\} \quad \text{and} \quad S = \{(a, y), (b, x), (c, y), (c, z)\}$$

(*a*) Find the composition relation $R \circ S$.

(*b*) Find the matrices M_R, M_S, and $M_{R \circ S}$ of the respective relations R, S, and $R \circ S$, and compare $M_{R \circ S}$ to the product $M_R M_S$.

(*a*) Draw the arrow diagram of the relations R and S as in Fig. 2-7(*a*). Observe that 1 in A is "connected" to x in C by the path $1 \to b \to x$; hence $(1, x)$ belongs to $R \circ S$. Similarly, $(2, y)$ and $(2, z)$ belong to $R \circ S$.
We have

$$R \circ S = \{(1, x), (2, y), (2, z)\}$$



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 2-7

(*b*) The matrices of M_R, M_S, and $M_{R\circ S}$ follow:

$$M_R = \begin{array}{c} \\ 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{array}\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccc} a & b & c \end{array} \\ \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \end{array} \quad M_S = \begin{array}{c} \\ a \\ b \\ c \end{array}\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccc} x & y & z \end{array} \\ \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \end{array} \quad M_{R\circ S} = \begin{array}{c} \\ 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{array}\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccc} x & y & z \end{array} \\ \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \end{array}$$

Multiplying M_R and M_S we obtain

$$M_R M_S = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Observe that $M_{R\circ S}$ and $M_R M_S$ have the same zero entries.

2.6. Consider the relation $R = \{(1,1), (2,2), (2,3), (3,2), (4,2), (4,4)\}$ on $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$.
(*a*) Draw its directed graph. (*b*) Find $R^2 = R\circ R$.

(*a*) For each $(a, b) \in R$, draw an arrow from a to b as in Fig. 2-7(*b*).

(*b*) For each pair $(a, b) \in R$, find all $(b, c) \in R$. Then $(a, c) \in R^2$. Thus

$$R^2 = \{(1,1), (2,2), (2,3), (3,2), (3,3), (4,2), (4,3), (4,4)\}$$

2.7. Let R and S be the following relations on $A = \{1, 2, 3\}$:

$$R = \{(1,1), (1,2), (2,3), (3,1), (3,3)\}, \quad S = \{(1,2), (1,3), (2,1), (3,3)\}$$

Find (*a*) $R \cup S$, $R \cap S$, R^{C}; (*b*) $R\circ S$; (*c*) $S^2 = S\circ S$.

(*a*) Treat R and S simply as sets, and take the usual intersection and union. For R^{C}, use the fact that $A \times A$ is the universal relation on A.

$$\begin{aligned} R \cap S &= \{(1,2), (3,3)\} \\ R \cup S &= \{(1,1), (1,2), (1,3), (2,1), (2,3), (3,1), (3,3)\} \\ R^{\mathrm{C}} &= \{(1,3), (2,1), (2,2), (3,2)\} \end{aligned}$$

(*b*) For each pair $(a, b) \in R$, find all pairs $(b, c) \in S$. Then $(a, c) \in R\circ S$. For example, $(1, 1) \in R$ and $(1, 2)$, $(1, 3) \in S$; hence $(1, 2)$ and $(1, 3)$ belong to $R\circ S$. Thus,

$$R\circ S = \{(1,2), (1,3), (1,1), (2,3), (3,2), (3,3)\}$$

(*c*) Following the algorithm in (*b*), we get

$$S^2 = S\circ S = \{(1,1), (1,3), (2,2), (2,3), (3,3)\}$$

2.8. Prove Theorem 2.1: Let A, B, C and D be sets. Suppose R is a relation from A to B, S is a relation from B to C and T is a relation from C to D. Then $(R\circ S)\circ T = R\circ(S\circ T)$.

We need to show that each ordered pair in $(R\circ S)\circ T$ belongs to $R\circ(S\circ T)$, and vice versa.

Suppose (a, d) belongs to $(R\circ S)\circ T$. Then there exists $c \in C$ such that $(a, c) \in R\circ S$ and $(c, d) \in T$. Since $(a, c) \in R\circ S$, there exists $b \in B$ such that $(a, b) \in R$ and $(b, c) \in S$. Since $(b, c) \in S$ and $(c, d) \in T$, we have $(b, d) \in S\circ T$; and since $(a, b) \in R$ and $(b, d) \in S\circ T$, we have $(a, d) \in R\circ(S\circ T)$. Therefore, $(R\circ S)\circ T \subseteq R\circ(S\circ T)$. Similarly $R\circ(S\circ T) \subseteq (R\circ S)\circ T$. Both inclusion relations prove $(R\circ S)\circ T = R\circ(S\circ T)$.

TYPES OF RELATIONS AND CLOSURE PROPERTIES

2.9. Consider the following five relations on the set $A = \{1, 2, 3\}$:

$$R = \{(1, 1), (1, 2), (1, 3), (3, 3)\}, \qquad \emptyset = \text{empty relation}$$
$$S = \{(1, 1)(1, 2), (2, 1)(2, 2), (3, 3)\}, \quad A \times A = \text{universal relation}$$
$$T = \{(1, 1), (1, 2), (2, 2), (2, 3)\}$$

Determine whether or not each of the above relations on A is: (*a*) reflexive; (*b*) symmetric; (*c*) transitive; (*d*) antisymmetric.

(*a*) R is not reflexive since $2 \in A$ but $(2, 2) \notin R$. T is not reflexive since $(3, 3) \notin T$ and, similarly, $\emptyset$ is not reflexive. S and $A \times A$ are reflexive.

(*b*) R is not symmetric since $(1, 2) \in R$ but $(2, 1) \notin R$, and similarly T is not symmetric. S, $\emptyset$, and $A \times A$ are symmetric.

(*c*) T is not transitive since $(1, 2)$ and $(2, 3)$ belong to T, but $(1, 3)$ does not belong to T. The other four relations are transitive.

(*d*) S is not antisymmetric since $1 \neq 2$, and $(1, 2)$ and $(2, 1)$ both belong to S. Similarly, $A \times A$ is not antisymmetric. The other three relations are antisymmetric.

2.10. Give an example of a relation R on $A = \{1, 2, 3\}$ such that:

(*a*) R is both symmetric and antisymmetric.

(*b*) R is neither symmetric nor antisymmetric.

(*c*) R is transitive but $R \cup R^{-1}$ is not transitive.

There are several such examples. One possible set of examples follows:

(*a*) $R = \{(1, 1), (2, 2)\}$; (*b*) $R = \{(1, 2), (2, 3)\}$; (*c*) $R = \{(1, 2)\}$.

2.11. Suppose C is a collection of relations S on a set A, and let T be the intersection of the relations S in C, that is, $T = \cap(S \mid S \in C)$ Prove:

(*a*) If every S is symmetric, then T is symmetric.

(*b*) If every S is transitive, then T is transitive.

(*a*) Suppose $(a, b) \in T$. Then $(a, b) \in S$ for every S. Since each S is symmetric, $(b, a) \in S$ for every S. Hence $(b, a) \in T$ and T is symmetric.

(*b*) Suppose (a, b) and (b, c) belong to T. Then (a, b) and (b, c) belong to S for every S. Since each S is transitive, (a, c) belongs to S for every S. Hence, $(a, c) \in T$ and T is transitive.

2.12. Let R be a relation on a set A, and let P be a property of relations, such as symmetry and transitivity. Then P will be called *R-closable* if P satisfies the following two conditions:

(1) There is a P-relation S containing R.

(2) The intersection of P-relations is a P-relation.

(*a*) Show that symmetry and transitivity are R-closable for any relation R.

(*b*) Suppose P is R-closable. Then $P(R)$, the P-closure of R, is the intersection of all P-relations S containing R, that is,

$$P(R) = \cap(S \mid S \text{ is a } P\text{-relation and } R \subseteq S)$$

(*a*) The universal relation $A \times A$ is symmetric and transitive and $A \times A$ contains any relation R on A. Thus (1) is satisfied. By Problem 2.11, symmetry and transitivity satisfy (2). Thus symmetry and transitivity are R-closable for any relation R.

(*b*) Let $T = \cap(S \mid S$ is a P-relation and $R \subseteq S)$. Since P is R-closable, T is nonempty by (1) and T is a P-relation by (2). Since each relation S contains R, the intersection T contains R. Thus, T is a P-relation containing R. By definition, $P(R)$ is the smallest P-relation containing R; hence $P(R) \subseteq T$. On the other hand, $P(R)$ is one of the sets S defining T, that is, $P(R)$ is a P-relation and if $R \subseteq P(R)$. Therefore, $T \subseteq P(R)$. Accordingly, $P(R) = T$.

2.13. Consider the relation $R = \{(a, a), (a, b), (b, c), (c, c)\}$ on the set $A = \{a, b, c\}$. Find: (*a*) reflexive(R); (*b*) symmetric(R); (*c*) transitive(R).

(*a*) The reflexive closure on R is obtained by adding all diagonal pairs of $A \times A$ to R which are not currently in R. Hence,

$$\text{reflexive}(R) = R \cup \{(b, b)\} = \{(a, a), (a, b), (b, b), (b, c), (c, c)\}$$

(*b*) The symmetric closure on R is obtained by adding all the pairs in R^{-1} to R which are not currently in R. Hence,

$$\text{symmetric}(R) = R \cup \{(b, a), (c, b)\} = \{(a, a), (a, b), (b, a), (b, c), (c, b), (c, c)\}$$

(*c*) The transitive closure on R, since A has three elements, is obtained by taking the union of R with $R^2 = R \circ R$ and $R^3 = R \circ R \circ R$. Note that

$$R^2 = R \circ R = \{(a, a), (a, b), (a, c), (b, c), (c, c)\}$$
$$R^3 = R \circ R \circ R = \{(a, a), (a, b), (a, c), (b, c), (c, c)\}$$

Hence

$$\text{transitive}(R) = R \cup R^2 \cup R^3 = \{(a, a), (a, b), (a, c), (b, c), (c, c)\}$$

EQUIVALENCE RELATIONS AND PARTITIONS

2.14. Consider the **Z** of integers and an integer $m > 1$. We say that x is congruent to y modulo m, written

$$x \equiv y \pmod{m}$$

if $x - y$ is divisible by m. Show that this defines an equivalence relation on **Z**.

We must show that the relation is reflexive, symmetric, and transitive.

(i) For any x in Z we have $x \equiv x \pmod{m}$ because $x - x = 0$ is divisible by m. Hence the relation is reflexive.

(ii) Suppose $x \equiv y \pmod{m}$, so $x - y$ is divisible by m. Then $-(x - y) = y - x$ is also divisible by m, so $y \equiv x \pmod{m}$. Thus the relation is symmetric.

(iii) Now suppose $x \equiv y \pmod{m}$ and $y \equiv z \pmod{m}$, so $x - y$ and $y - z$ are each divisible by m. Then the sum

$$(x - y) + (y - z) = x - z$$

is also divisible by m; hence $x \equiv z \pmod{m}$. Thus the relation is transitive.

Accordingly, the relation of congruence modulo m on **Z** is an equivalence relation.

2.15. Let A be a set of nonzero integers and let $\approx$ be the relation on $A \times A$ defined by

$$(a, b) \approx (c, d) \quad \text{whenever} \quad ad = bc$$

Prove that $\approx$ is an equivalence relation.

We must show that $\approx$ is reflexive, symmetric, and transitive.

(i) *Reflexivity*: We have $(a, b) \approx (a, b)$ since $ab = ba$. Hence $\approx$ is reflexive.

(ii) *Symmetry*: Suppose $(a, b) \approx (c, d)$. Then $ad = bc$. Accordingly, $cb = da$ and hence $(c, d) = (a, b)$. Thus, $\approx$ is symmetric.

(iii) *Transitivity*: Suppose $(a, b) \approx (c, d)$ and $(c, d) \approx (e, f)$. Then $ad = bc$ and $cf = de$. Multiplying corresponding terms of the equations gives $(ad)(cf) = (bc)(de)$. Canceling $c \neq 0$ and $d \neq 0$ from both sides of the equation yields $af = be$, and hence $(a, b) \approx (e, f)$. Thus $\approx$ is transitive. Accordingly, $\approx$ is an equivalence relation.

2.16. Let R be the following equivalence relation on the set $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$:

$$R = \{(1, 1), (1, 5), (2, 2), (2, 3), (2, 6), (3, 2), (3, 3), (3, 6), (4, 4), (5, 1), (5, 5), (6, 2), (6, 3), (6, 6)\}$$

Find the partition of A induced by R, i.e., find the equivalence classes of R.

Those elements related to 1 are 1 and 5 hence

$$[1] = \{1, 5\}$$

We pick an element which does not belong to [1], say 2. Those elements related to 2 are 2, 3, and 6, hence

$$[2] = \{2, 3, 6\}$$

The only element which does not belong to [1] or [2] is 4. The only element related to 4 is 4. Thus

$$[4] = \{4\}$$

Accordingly, the following is the partition of A induced by R:

$$[\{1, 5\}, \{2, 3, 6\}, \{4\}]$$

2.17. Prove Theorem 2.6: Let R be an equivalence relation in a set A. Then the quotient set A/R is a partition of A. Specifically,

(i) $a \in [a]$, for every $a \in A$.
(ii) $[a] = [b]$ if and only if $(a, b) \in R$.
(iii) If $[a] \neq [b]$, then $[a]$ and $[b]$ are disjoint.

(*a*) *Proof of (i)*: Since R is reflexive, $(a, a) \in R$ for every $a \in A$ and therefore $a \in [a]$.

(*b*) *Proof of (ii)*: Suppose $(a, b) \in R$. We want to show that $[a] = [b]$. Let $x \in [b]$; then $(b, x) \in R$. But by hypothesis $(a, a) \in R$ and so, by transitivity, $(a, x) \in R$. Accordingly $x \in [a]$. Thus $[b] \subseteq [a]$. To prove that $[a] \subseteq [b]$ we observe that $(a, b) \in R$ implies, by symmetry, that $(b, a) \in R$. Then, by a similar argument, we obtain $[a] \subseteq [b]$. Consequently, $[a] = [b]$.
On the other hand, if $[a] = [b]$, then, by (i), $b \in [b] = [a]$; hence $(a, b) \in R$.

(*c*) *Proof of (iii)*: We prove the equivalent contrapositive statement:

$$\text{If } [a] \cap [b] \neq \emptyset \quad \text{then} \quad [a] = [b]$$

If $[a] \cap [b] \neq \emptyset$, then there exists an element $x \in A$ with $x \in [a] \cap [b]$. Hence $(a, x) \in R$ and $(b, x) \in R$. By symmetry, $(x, b) \in R$ and by transitivity, $(a, b) \in R$. Consequently by (ii), $[a] = [b]$.

PARTIAL ORDERINGS

2.18. Let ℓ be any collection of sets. Is the relation of set inclusion $\subseteq$ a partial order on ℓ?

Yes, since set inclusion is reflexive, antisymmetric, and transitive. That is, for any sets A, B, C in ℓ we have: (i) $A \subseteq A$; (ii) if $A \subseteq B$ and $B \subseteq A$, then $A = B$; (iii) if $A \subseteq B$ and $B \subseteq C$, then $A \subseteq C$.

2.19. Consider the set $\mathbf{Z}$ of integers. Define aRb by $b = a^r$ for some positive integer r. Show that R is a partial order on $\mathbf{Z}$, that is, show that R is: (*a*) reflexive; (*b*) antisymmetric; (*c*) transitive.

(*a*) R is reflexive since $a = a^1$.

(*b*) Suppose aRb and bRa, say $b = a^r$ and $a = b^s$. Then $a = (a^r)^s = a^{rs}$. There are three possibilities: (i) $rs = 1$, (ii) $a = 1$, and (iii) $a = -1$. If $rs = 1$ then $r = 1$ and $s = 1$ and so $a = b$. If $a = 1$ then $b = 1^r = 1 = a$, and, similarly, if $b = 1$ then $a = 1$. Lastly, if $a = -1$ then $b = -1$ (since $b \neq 1$) and $a = b$. In all three cases, $a = b$. Thus R is antisymmetric.

(*c*) Suppose aRb and bRc say $b = a^r$ and $c = b^s$. Then $c = (a^r)^s = a^{rs}$ and, therefore, aRc. Hence R is transitive.

Accordingly, R is a partial order on $\mathbf{Z}$.

Supplementary Problems

RELATIONS

2.20. Let $S = \{a, b, c\}$, $T = \{b, c, d\}$, and $W = \{a, d\}$. Find $S \times T \times W$.

2.21. Find x and y where: (a) $(x + 2, 4) = (5, 2x + y)$; (b) $(y - 2, 2x + 1) = (x - 1, y + 2)$.

2.22. Prove: (a) $A \times (B \cap C) = (A \times B) \cap (A \times C)$; (b) $A \times (B \cup C) = (A \times B) \cup (A \times C)$.

2.23. Consider the relation $R = \{(1, 3), (1, 4), (3, 2), (3, 3), (3, 4)\}$ on $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$.

(a) Find the matrix M_R of R.
(b) Find the domain and range of R.
(c) Find R^{-1}.
(d) Draw the directed graph of R.
(e) Find the composition relation $R \circ R$.
(f) Find $R \circ R^{-1}$ and $R^{-1} \circ R$.

2.24. Let $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$, $B = \{a, b, c\}$, $C = \{x, y, z\}$. Consider the relations R from A to B and S from B to C as follows:

$$R = \{(1, b), (3, a), (3, b), (4, c)\} \quad \text{and} \quad S = \{(a, y), (c, x), (a, z)\}$$

(a) Draw the diagrams of R and S.
(b) Find the matrix of each relation R, S (composition) $R \circ S$.
(c) Write R^{-1} and the composition $R \circ S$ as sets of ordered pairs.

2.25. Let R and S be the following relations on $B = \{a, b, c, d\}$:

$$R = \{(a, a), (a, c), (c, b), (c, d), (d, b)\} \quad \text{and} \quad S = \{(b, a), (c, c), (c, d), (d, a)\}$$

Find the following composition relations: (a) $R \circ S$; (b) $S \circ R$; (c) $R \circ R$; (d) $S \circ S$.

2.26. Let R be the relation on **N** defined by $x + 3y = 12$, i.e. $R = \{(x, y) \mid x + 3y = 12\}$.

(a) Write R as a set of ordered pairs.
(b) Find the domain and range of R.
(c) Find R^{-1}.
(d) Find the composition relation $R \circ R$.

PROPERTIES OF RELATIONS

2.27. Each of the following defines a relation on the positive integers **N**:

(1) "x is greater than y."
(2) "xy is the square of an integer."
(3) $x + y = 10$
(4) $x + 4y = 10$.

Determine which of the relations are: (a) reflexive; (b) symmetric; (c) antisymmetric; (d) transitive.

2.28. Let R and S be relations on a set A. Assuming A has at least three elements, state whether each of the following statements is true or false. If it is false, give a counterexample on the set $A = \{1, 2, 3\}$:

(a) If R and S are symmetric then $R \cap S$ is symmetric.
(b) If R and S are symmetric then $R \cup S$ is symmetric.
(c) If R and S are reflexive then $R \cap S$ is reflexive.

(d) If R and S are reflexive then $R \cup S$ is reflexive.

(e) If R and S are transitive then $R \cup S$ is transitive.

(f) If R and S are antisymmetric then $R \cup S$ is antisymmetric.

(g) If R is antisymmetric, then R^{-1} is antisymmetric.

(h) If R is reflexive then $R \cap R^{-1}$ is not empty.

(i) If R is symmetric then $R \cap R^{-1}$ is not empty.

2.29. Suppose R and S are relations on a set A, and R is antisymmetric. Prove that $R \cap S$ is antisymmetric.

EQUIVALENCE RELATIONS

2.30. Prove that if R is an equivalence relation on a set A, than R^{-1} is also an equivalence relation on A.

2.31. Let $S = \{1, 2, 3, \ldots, 18, 19\}$. Let R be the relation on S defined by "*xy* is a square," (a) Prove R is an equivalence relation. (b) Find the equivalence class [1]. (c) List all equivalence classes with more than one element.

2.32. Let $S = \{1, 2, 3, \ldots, 14, 15\}$. Let R be the equivalence relation on S defined by $x \equiv y \pmod 5$, that is, $x - y$ is divisible by 5. Find the partition of S induced by R, i.e. the quotient set S/R.

2.33. Let $S = \{1, 2, 3, \ldots, 9\}$, and let $\sim$ be the relation on $A \times A$ defined by

$$(a, b) \sim (c, d) \quad \text{whenever} \quad a + d = b + c.$$

(a) Prove that $\sim$ is an equivalence relation.

(b) Find $[(2, 5)]$, that is, the equivalence class of $(2, 5)$.

Answers to Supplementary Problems

2.20. $\{(a, b, a), (a, b, d), (a, c, a), (a, c, d), (a, d, a), (a, d, d), (b, b, a), (b, b, d), (b, c, a), (b, c, d), (b, d, a), (b, d, d), (c, b, a), (c, b, d), (c, c, a), (c, c, d), (c, d, a), (c, d, d)\}$

2.21. (a) $x = 3, y = -2$; (b) $x = 2, y = 3$.

2.23. (a) $M_R = [0, 0, 1, 1;\ 0, 0, 0, 0;\ 0, 1, 1, 1; 0, 0, 0, 0]$;

(b) Domain $= \{1, 3\}$, range $= \{2, 3, 4\}$;

(c) $R^{-1} = \{(3, 1), (4, 1), (2, 3), (3, 3), (4, 3)\}$;

(d) See Fig. 2-8(*a*);

(e) $R o R = \{(1, 2), (1, 3), (1, 4), (3, 2), (3, 3), (3, 4)\}$.

2.24. (a) See Fig. 2-8(*b*);

(b) $R = [0, 1, 0;\ 0, 0, 0;\ 1, 1, 0;\ 0, 0, 1]$,
$S = [0, 1, 1;\ 0, 0, 0;\ 1, 0, 0]$,
$R \circ S = [0, 0, 0;\ 0, 0, 0;\ 0, 1, 1;\ 1, 0, 0]$;

(c) $\{(b, 1), (a, 3), (b, 3), (c, 4)\}$, $\{(3, y), (3, z), (4, x)\}$.

2.25. (a) $R \circ S = \{(a, c), (a, d), (c, a), (d, a)\}$
(b) $S \circ R = \{(b, a), (b, c), (c, b), (c, d), (d, a), (d, c)\}$
(c) $R \circ R = \{(a, a), (a, b), (a, c), (a, d), (c, b)\}$
(d) $S \circ S = \{(c, c), (c, a), (c, d)\}$

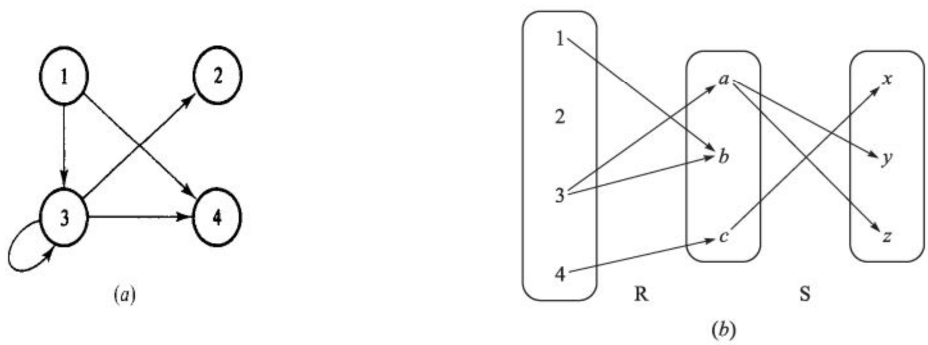


Fig. 2-8

2.26. (a) $\{(9, 1), (6, 2), (3, 3)\}$; (b) (i) $\{9, 6, 3\}$, (ii) $\{1, 2, 3\}$, (iii) $\{(1, 9), (2, 6), (3, 3)\}$; (c) $\{(3, 3)\}$.

2.27. (a) None; (b) (2) and (3); (c) (1) and (4); (d) all except (3).

2.28. All are true except: (e) $R = \{(1, 2)\}$, $S = \{(2, 3)\}$; (f) $R = \{(1, 2)\}$, $S = \{(2, 1)\}$.

2.31. (b) $\{1, 4, 9, 16\}$; (c) $\{1, 4, 9, 16\}, \{2, 8, 18\}, \{3, 12\}$.

2.32. $[\{1, 6, 11\}, \{2, 7, 12\}, \{3, 8, 133\}, \{4, 9, 14\}, \{5, 10, 15\}]$

2.33. (b) $\{(1, 4), (2, 5), (3, 6), (4, 7), (5, 8), (6, 9)\}$.

CHAPTER 3

Functions and Algorithms

3.1 INTRODUCTION

One of the most important concepts in mathematics is that of a function. The terms "map," "mapping," "transformation," and many others mean the same thing; the choice of which word to use in a given situation is usually determined by tradition and the mathematical background of the person using the term.

Related to the notion of a function is that of an algorithm. The notation for presenting an algorithm and a discussion of its complexity is also covered in this chapter.

3.2 FUNCTIONS

Suppose that to each element of a set A we assign a unique element of a set B; the collection of such assignments is called *a function* from A into B. The set A is called the *domain* of the function, and the set B is called the *target set* or *codomain*.

Functions are ordinarily denoted by symbols. For example, let f denote a function from A into B. Then we write

$$f\colon A \to B$$

which is read: "f is a function from A into B," or "f takes (or maps) A into B." If $a \in A$, then $f(a)$ (read: "f of a") denotes the unique element of B which f assigns to a; it is called the *image* of a under f, or the *value* of f at a. The set of all image values is called the *range* or *image* of f. The image of $f\colon A \to B$ is denoted by $\mathrm{Ran}(f)$, $\mathrm{Im}(f)$ or $f(A)$.

Frequently, a function can be expressed by means of a mathematical formula. For example, consider the function which sends each real number into its square. We may describe this function by writing

$$f(x) = x^2 \quad \text{or} \quad x \mapsto x^2 \quad \text{or} \quad y = x^2$$

In the first notation, x is called a *variable* and the letter f denotes the function. In the second notation, the barred arrow $\mapsto$ is read "goes into." In the last notation, x is called the *independent variable* and y is called the *dependent variable* since the value of y will depend on the value of x.

Remark: Whenever a function is given by a formula in terms of a variable x, we assume, unless it is otherwise stated, that the domain of the function is **R** (or the largest subset of **R** for which the formula has meaning) and the codomain is **R**.

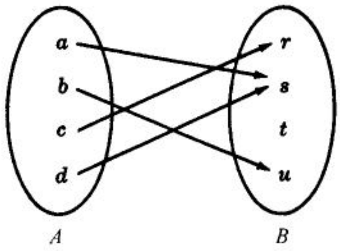


Fig. 3-1

EXAMPLE 3.1

(a) Consider the function $f(x) = x^3$, i.e., *f* assigns to each real number its cube. Then the image of 2 is 8, and so we may write $f(2) = 8$.

(b) Figure 3-1 defines a function *f* from $A = \{a, b, c, d\}$ into $B = \{r, s, t, u\}$ in the obvious way. Here

$$f(a) = s, \quad f(b) = u, \quad f(c) = r, \quad f(d) = s$$

The image of *f* is the set of image values, $\{r, s, u\}$. Note that *t* does not belong to the image of *f* because *t* is not the image of any element under *f*.

(c) Let *A* be any set. The function from *A* into *A* which assigns to each element in *A* the element itself is called the *identity function* on *A* and it is usually denoted by 1_A, or simply 1. In other words, for every $a \in A$,

$$1_A(a) = a.$$

(d) Suppose *S* is a subset of *A*, that is, suppose $S \subseteq A$. The *inclusion map* or *embedding* of *S* into *A*, denoted by $i: S \hookrightarrow A$ is the function such that, for every $x \in S$,

$$i(x) = x$$

The *restriction* of any function $f: A \to B$, denoted by $f|_S$ is the function from *S* into *B* such that, for any $x \in S$,

$$f|_S(x) = f(x)$$

Functions as Relations

There is another point of view from which functions may be considered. First of all, every function $f: A \to B$ gives rise to a relation from *A* to *B* called the *graph of f* and defined by

$$\text{Graph of } f = \{(a, b) \mid a \in A, b = f(a)\}$$

Two functions $f: A \to B$ and $g: A \to B$ are defined to be *equal*, written $f = g$, if $f(a) = g(a)$ for every $a \in A$; that is, if they have the same graph. Accordingly, we do not distinguish between a function and its graph. Now, such a graph relation has the property that each *a* in *A* belongs to a unique ordered pair (a, b) in the relation. On the other hand, any relation *f* from *A* to *B* that has this property gives rise to a function $f: A \to B$, where $f(a) = b$ for each (a, b) in *f*. Consequently, one may equivalently define a function as follows:

Definition: A function $f: A \to B$ is a relation from *A* to *B* (i.e., a subset of $A \times B$) such that each $a \in A$ belongs to a unique ordered pair (a, b) in *f*.

Although we do not distinguish between a function and its graph, we will still use the terminology "graph of *f*" when referring to *f* as a set of ordered pairs. Moreover, since the graph of *f* is a relation, we can draw its picture as was done for relations in general, and this pictorial representation is itself sometimes called the graph of *f*. Also, the defining condition of a function, that each $a \in A$ belongs to a unique pair (a, b) in *f*, is equivalent to the geometrical condition of each vertical line intersecting the graph in exactly one point.

EXAMPLE 3.2

(a) Let f: $A \to B$ be the function defined in Example 3.1 (b). Then the graph of f is as follows:

$$\{(a, s),\ (b, u),\ (c, r),\ (d, s)\}$$

(b) Consider the following three relations on the set $A = \{1, 2, 3\}$:

$$f = \{(1, 3),\ (2, 3),\ (3, 1)\}, \quad g = \{(1, 2),\ (3, 1)\}, \quad h = \{(1, 3),\ (2, 1),\ (1, 2),\ (3, 1)\}$$

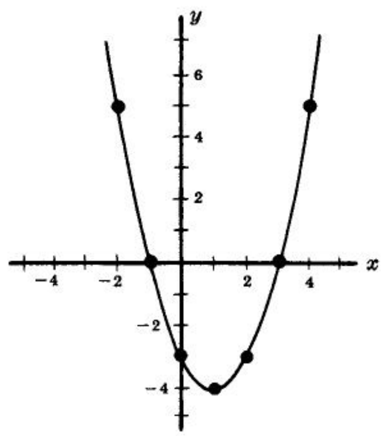
f is a function from A into A since each member of A appears as the first coordinate in exactly one ordered pair in f; here $f(1) = 3$, $f(2) = 3$, and $f(3) = 1$. g is not a function from A into A since $2 \in A$ is not the first coordinate of any pair in g and so g does not assign any image to 2. Also h is not a function from A into A since $1 \in A$ appears as the first coordinate of two distinct ordered pairs in h, $(1, 3)$ and $(1, 2)$. If h is to be a function it cannot assign both 3 and 2 to the element $1 \in A$.

(c) By a *real polynomial function*, we mean a function f: $\mathbf{R} \to \mathbf{R}$ of the form

$$f(x) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1 x + a_0$$

where the a_i are real numbers. Since $\mathbf{R}$ is an infinite set, it would be impossible to plot each point of the graph. However, the graph of such a function can be approximated by first plotting some of its points and then drawing a smooth curve through these points. The points are usually obtained from a table where various values are assigned to x and the corresponding values of $f(x)$ are computed. Figure 3-2 illustrates this technique using the function $f(x) = x^2 - 2x - 3$.

x	$f(x)$
−2	5
−1	0
0	−3
1	−4
2	−3
3	0
4	5



Graph of $f(x) = x^2 - 2x - 3$

Fig. 3-2

Composition Function

Consider functions f: $A \to B$ and g: $B \to C$; that is, where the codomain of f is the domain of g. Then we may define a new function from A to C, called the *composition* of f and g and written $g \circ f$, as follows:

$$(g \circ f)(a) \equiv g(f(a))$$

That is, we find the image of a under f and then find the image of $f(a)$ under g. This definition is not really new. If we view f and g as relations, then this function is the same as the composition of f and g as relations (see Section 2.6) except that here we use the functional notation $g \circ f$ for the composition of f and g instead of the notation $f \circ g$ which was used for relations.

Consider any function $f\colon A \to B$. Then

$$f \circ 1_A = f \quad \text{and} \quad 1_B \circ f = f$$

where 1_A and 1_B are the identity functions on A and B, respectively.

3.3 ONE-TO-ONE, ONTO, AND INVERTIBLE FUNCTIONS

A function $f\colon A \to B$ is said to be *one-to-one* (written 1-1) if different elements in the domain A have distinct images. Another way of saying the same thing is that f is *one-to-one* if $f(a) = f(a')$ implies $a = a'$.

A function $f\colon A \to B$ is said to be an *onto* function if each element of B is the image of some element of A. In other words, $f\colon A \to B$ is onto if the image of f is the entire codomain, i.e., if $f(A) = B$. In such a case we say that f is a function from A onto B or that f maps A onto B.

A function $f\colon A \to B$ is *invertible* if its inverse relation f^{-1} is a function from B to A. In general, the inverse relation f^{-1} may not be a function. The following theorem gives simple criteria which tells us when it is.

Theorem 3.1: A function $f\colon A \to B$ is invertible if and only if f is both one-to-one and onto.

If $f\colon A \to B$ is one-to-one and onto, then f is called a *one-to-one correspondence* between A and B. This terminology comes from the fact that each element of A will then correspond to a unique element of B and vice versa.

Some texts use the terms *injective* for a one-to-one function, *surjective* for an onto function, and *bijective* for a one-to-one correspondence.

EXAMPLE 3.3 Consider the functions $f_1\colon A \to B$, $f_2\colon B \to C$, $f_3\colon C \to D$ and $f_4\colon D \to E$ defined by the diagram of Fig. 3-3. Now f_1 is one-to-one since no element of B is the image of more than one element of A. Similarly, f_2 is one-to-one. However, neither f_3 nor f_4 is one-to-one since $f_3(r) = f_3(u)$ and $f_4(v) = f_4(w)$

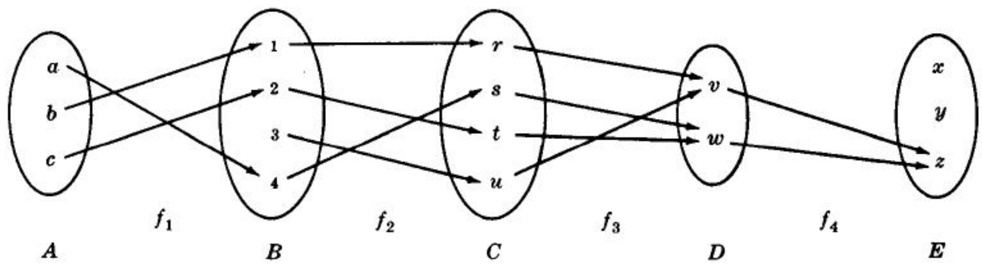


Fig. 3-3

As far as being onto is concerned, f_2 and f_3 are both onto functions since every element of C is the image under f_2 of some element of B and every element of D is the image under f_3 of some element of C, $f_2(B) = C$ and $f_3(C) = D$. On the other hand, f_1 is not onto since $3 \in B$ is not the image under f_4 of any element of A. and f_4 is not onto since $x \in E$ is not the image under f_4 of any element of D.

Thus f_1 is one-to-one but not onto, f_3 is onto but not one-to-one and f_4 is neither one-to-one nor onto. However, f_2 is both one-to-one and onto, i.e., is a one-to-one correspondence between A and B. Hence f_2 is invertible and f_2^{-1} is a function from C to B.

Geometrical Characterization of One-to-One and Onto Functions

Consider now functions of the form $f\colon \mathbf{R} \to \mathbf{R}$. Since the graphs of such functions may be plotted in the Cartesian plane $\mathbf{R}^2$ and since functions may be identified with their graphs, we might wonder whether the concepts of being one-to-one and onto have some geometrical meaning. The answer is yes. Specifically:

(1) $f:\mathbf{R} \to \mathbf{R}$ is one-to-one if each horizontal line intersects the graph of f in at most one point.

(2) $f:\mathbf{R} \to \mathbf{R}$ is an onto function if each horizontal line intersects the graph of f at one or more points.

Accordingly, if f is both one-to-one and onto, i.e. invertible, then each horizontal line will intersect the graph of f at exactly one point.

EXAMPLE 3.4 Consider the following four functions from $\mathbf{R}$ into $\mathbf{R}$:

$$f_1(x) = x^2, \quad f_2(x) = 2^x, \quad f_3(x) = x^3 - 2x^2 - 5x + 6, \quad f_4(x) = x^3$$

The graphs of these functions appear in Fig. 3-4. Observe that there are horizontal lines which intersect the graph of f_1 twice and there are horizontal lines which do not intersect the graph of f_1 at all; hence f_1 is neither one-to-one nor onto. Similarly, f_2 is one-to-one but not onto, f_3 is onto but not one-to-one and f_4 is both one-to-one and onto. The inverse of f_4 is the cube root function, i.e., $f_4^{-1}(x) = \sqrt[3]{x}$.

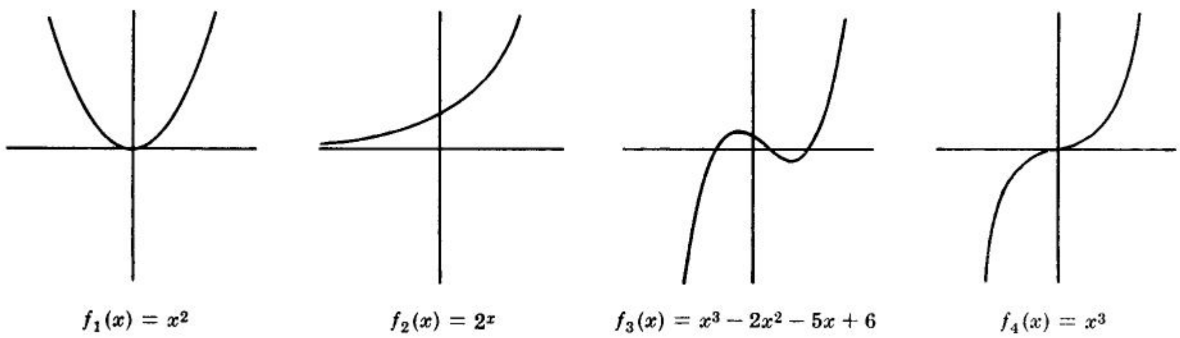


Fig. 3-4

Permutations

An invertible (bijective) function $\sigma: X \to X$ is called a *permutation* on X. The composition and inverses of permutations on X and the identity function on X are also permutations on X.

Suppose $X = \{1, 2, \ldots, n\}$. Then a permutation σ on X is frequently denoted by

$$\sigma = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & \cdots & n \\ j_1 & j_2 & j_3 & \cdots & j_n \end{pmatrix}$$

where $j_1 = \sigma(i)$. The set of all such permutations is denoted by S_n, and there are $n! = n(n-1)\cdots 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1$ of them. For example,

$$\sigma = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 4 & 6 & 2 & 5 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \tau = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 6 & 4 & 3 & 1 & 2 & 5 \end{pmatrix}$$

are permutations in S_6, and there are $6! = 720$ of them. Sometimes, we only write the second line of the permutation, that is, we denote the above permutations by writing $\sigma = 462513$ and $\tau = 643125$.

3.4 MATHEMATICAL FUNCTIONS, EXPONENTIAL AND LOGARITHMIC FUNCTIONS

This section presents various mathematical functions which appear often in the analysis of algorithms, and in computer science in general, together with their notation. We also discuss the exponential and logarithmic functions, and their relationship.

Floor and Ceiling Functions

Let x be any real number. Then x lies between two integers called the floor and the ceiling of x. Specifically,

$\lfloor x \rfloor$, called the *floor* of x, denotes the greatest integer that does not exceed x.

$\lceil x \rceil$, called the *ceiling* of x, denotes the least integer that is not less than x.

If x is itself an integer, then $\lfloor x \rfloor = \lceil x \rceil$; otherwise $\lfloor x \rfloor + 1 = \lceil x \rceil$. For example,

$$\lfloor 3.14 \rfloor = 3, \quad \left\lfloor \sqrt{5} \right\rfloor = 2, \quad \lfloor -8.5 \rfloor = -9, \quad \lfloor 7 \rfloor = 7, \quad \lfloor -4 \rfloor = -4,$$

$$\lceil 3.14 \rceil = 4, \quad \left\lceil \sqrt{5} \right\rceil = 3, \quad \lceil -8.5 \rceil = -8, \quad \lceil 7 \rceil = 7, \quad \lceil -4 \rceil = -4$$

Integer and Absolute Value Functions

Let x be any real number. The *integer value* of x, written INT(x), converts x into an integer by deleting (truncating) the fractional part of the number. Thus

$$\text{INT}(3.14) = 3, \quad \text{INT}(\sqrt{5}) = 2, \quad \text{INT}(-8.5) = -8, \quad \text{INT}(7) = 7$$

Observe that $\text{INT}(x) = \lfloor x \rfloor$ or $\text{INT}(x) = \lceil x \rceil$ according to whether x is positive or negative.

The *absolute value* of the real number x, written ABS(x) or $|x|$, is defined as the greater of x or $-x$. Hence ABS(0) = 0, and, for $x \neq 0$, $\text{ABS}(x) = x$ or $\text{ABS}(x) = -x$, depending on whether x is positive or negative. Thus

$$|-15| = 15, \quad |7| = 7, \quad |-3.33| = 3.33, \quad |4.44| = 4.44, \quad |-0.075| = 0.075$$

We note that $|x| = |-x|$ and, for $x \neq 0$, $|x|$ is positive.

Remainder Function and Modular Arithmetic

Let k be any integer and let M be a positive integer. Then

$$k \pmod{M}$$

(read: k modulo M) will denote the integer remainder when k is divided by M. More exactly, $k \pmod{M}$ is the unique integer r such that

$$k = Mq + r \quad \text{where} \quad 0 \leq r < M$$

When k is positive, simply divide k by M to obtain the remainder r. Thus

$$25 \pmod{7} = 4, \quad 25 \pmod{5} = 0, \quad 35 \pmod{11} = 2, \quad 3 \pmod{8} = 3$$

If k is negative, divide $|k|$ by M to obtain a remainder r'; then $k \pmod{M} = M - r'$ when $r' \neq 0$. Thus

$$-26 \pmod{7} = 7 - 5 = 2, \quad -371 \pmod{8} = 8 - 3 = 5, \quad -39 \pmod{3} = 0$$

The term "mod" is also used for the mathematical congruence relation, which is denoted and defined as follows:

$$a \equiv b \pmod{M} \quad \text{if any only if} \quad M \text{ divides } b - a$$

M is called the *modulus*, and $a \equiv b \pmod{M}$ is read "a is congruent to b modulo M". The following aspects of the congruence relation are frequently useful:

$$0 \equiv M \pmod{M} \quad \text{and} \quad a \pm M \equiv a \pmod{M}$$

12.1 Three-Dimensional Coordinate Systems

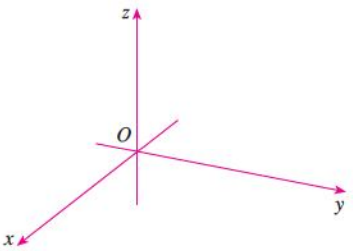


FIGURE 1
Coordinate axes

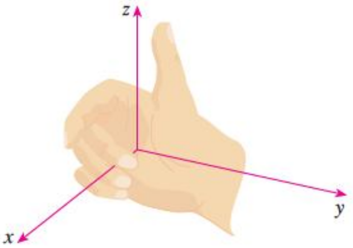


FIGURE 2
Right-hand rule

To locate a point in a plane, two numbers are necessary. We know that any point in the plane can be represented as an ordered pair (a, b) of real numbers, where a is the x-coordinate and b is the y-coordinate. For this reason, a plane is called two-dimensional. To locate a point in space, three numbers are required. We represent any point in space by an ordered triple (a, b, c) of real numbers.

In order to represent points in space, we first choose a fixed point O (the origin) and three directed lines through O that are perpendicular to each other, called the **coordinate axes** and labeled the x-axis, y-axis, and z-axis. Usually we think of the x- and y-axes as being horizontal and the z-axis as being vertical, and we draw the orientation of the axes as in Figure 1. The direction of the z-axis is determined by the **right-hand rule** as illustrated in Figure 2: If you curl the fingers of your right hand around the z-axis in the direction of a 90° counterclockwise rotation from the positive x-axis to the positive y-axis, then your thumb points in the positive direction of the z-axis.

The three coordinate axes determine the three **coordinate planes** illustrated in Figure 3(a). The xy-plane is the plane that contains the x- and y-axes; the yz-plane contains the y- and z-axes; the xz-plane contains the x- and z-axes. These three coordinate planes divide space into eight parts, called **octants**. The **first octant**, in the foreground, is determined by the positive axes.

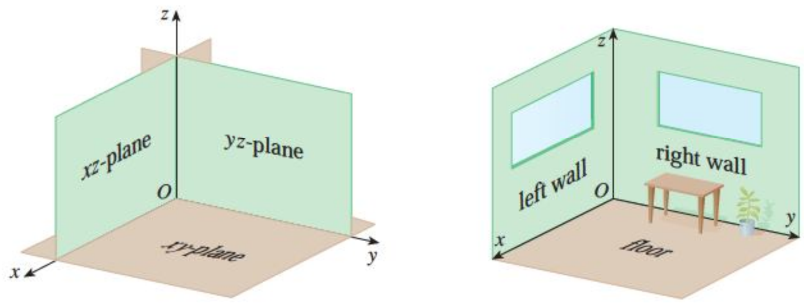


FIGURE 3 (a) Coordinate planes (b)

Because many people have some difficulty visualizing diagrams of three-dimensional figures, you may find it helpful to do the following [see Figure 3(b)]. Look at any bottom corner of a room and call the corner the origin. The wall on your left is in the xz-plane, the wall on your right is in the yz-plane, and the floor is in the xy-plane. The x-axis runs along the intersection of the floor and the left wall. The y-axis runs along the intersection of the floor and the right wall. The z-axis runs up from the floor toward the ceiling along the intersection of the two walls. You are situated in the first octant, and you can now imagine seven other rooms situated in the other seven octants (three on the same floor and four on the floor below), all connected by the common corner point O.

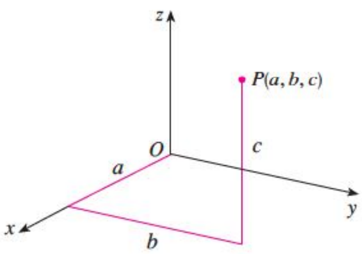


FIGURE 4

Now if P is any point in space, let a be the (directed) distance from the yz-plane to P, let b be the distance from the xz-plane to P, and let c be the distance from the xy-plane to P. We represent the point P by the ordered triple (a, b, c) of real numbers and we call a, b, and c the **coordinates** of P; a is the x-coordinate, b is the y-coordinate, and c is the z-coordinate. Thus, to locate the point (a, b, c), we can start at the origin O and move a units along the x-axis, then b units parallel to the y-axis, and then c units parallel to the z-axis as in Figure 4.

The point $P(a, b, c)$ determines a rectangular box as in Figure 5. If we drop a perpendicular from P to the xy-plane, we get a point Q with coordinates $(a, b, 0)$ called the **projection** of P onto the xy-plane. Similarly, $R(0, b, c)$ and $S(a, 0, c)$ are the projections of P onto the yz-plane and xz-plane, respectively.

As numerical illustrations, the points $(-4, 3, -5)$ and $(3, -2, -6)$ are plotted in Figure 6.

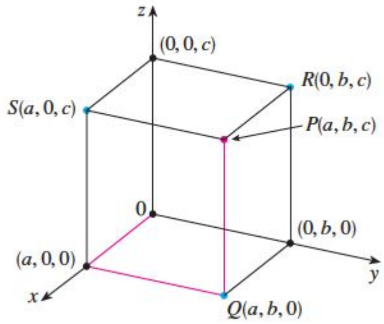


FIGURE 5

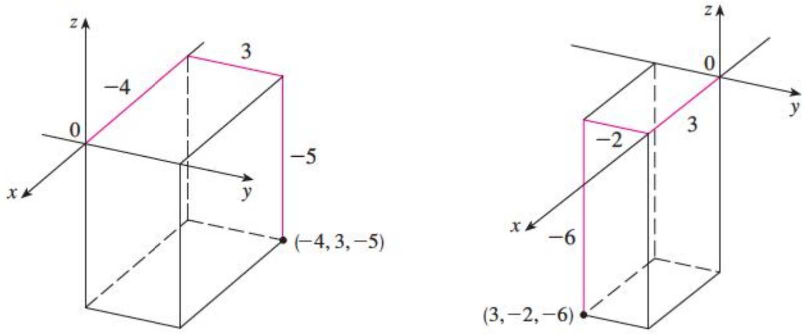


FIGURE 6

The Cartesian product $\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R} = \{(x, y, z) \mid x, y, z \in \mathbb{R}\}$ is the set of all ordered triples of real numbers and is denoted by $\mathbb{R}^3$. We have given a one-to-one correspondence between points P in space and ordered triples (a, b, c) in $\mathbb{R}^3$. It is called a **three-dimensional rectangular coordinate system**. Notice that, in terms of coordinates, the first octant can be described as the set of points whose coordinates are all positive.

In two-dimensional analytic geometry, the graph of an equation involving x and y is a curve in $\mathbb{R}^2$. In three-dimensional analytic geometry, an equation in x, y, and z represents a *surface* in $\mathbb{R}^3$.

V EXAMPLE 1 What surfaces in $\mathbb{R}^3$ are represented by the following equations?

(a) $z = 3$ (b) $y = 5$

SOLUTION

(a) The equation $z = 3$ represents the set $\{(x, y, z) \mid z = 3\}$, which is the set of all points in $\mathbb{R}^3$ whose z-coordinate is 3. This is the horizontal plane that is parallel to the xy-plane and three units above it as in Figure 7(a).

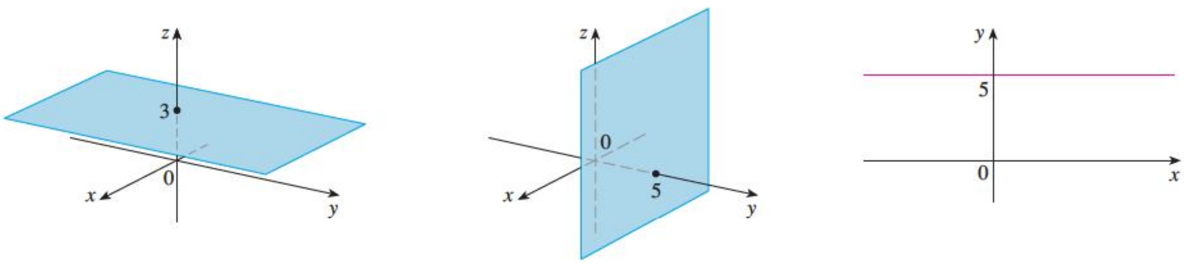


FIGURE 7 (a) $z = 3$, a plane in $\mathbb{R}^3$ (b) $y = 5$, a plane in $\mathbb{R}^3$ (c) $y = 5$, a line in $\mathbb{R}^2$

(b) The equation $y = 5$ represents the set of all points in $\mathbb{R}^3$ whose y-coordinate is 5. This is the vertical plane that is parallel to the xz-plane and five units to the right of it as in Figure 7(b).

NOTE When an equation is given, we must understand from the context whether it represents a curve in $\mathbb{R}^2$ or a surface in $\mathbb{R}^3$. In Example 1, $y = 5$ represents a plane in $\mathbb{R}^3$, but of course $y = 5$ can also represent a line in $\mathbb{R}^2$ if we are dealing with two-dimensional analytic geometry. See Figure 7(b) and (c).

In general, if k is a constant, then $x = k$ represents a plane parallel to the yz-plane, $y = k$ is a plane parallel to the xz-plane, and $z = k$ is a plane parallel to the xy-plane. In Figure 5, the faces of the rectangular box are formed by the three coordinate planes $x = 0$ (the yz-plane), $y = 0$ (the xz-plane), and $z = 0$ (the xy-plane), and the planes $x = a$, $y = b$, and $z = c$.

EXAMPLE 2

(a) Which points (x, y, z) satisfy the equations

$$x^2 + y^2 = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad z = 3$$

(b) What does the equation $x^2 + y^2 = 1$ represent as a surface in $\mathbb{R}^3$?

SOLUTION

(a) Because $z = 3$, the points lie in the horizontal plane $z = 3$ from Example 1(a). Because $x^2 + y^2 = 1$, the points lie on the circle with radius 1 and center on the z-axis. See Figure 8.

(b) Given that $x^2 + y^2 = 1$, with no restrictions on z, we see that the point (x, y, z) could lie on a circle in any horizontal plane $z = k$. So the surface $x^2 + y^2 = 1$ in $\mathbb{R}^3$ consists of all possible horizontal circles $x^2 + y^2 = 1$, $z = k$, and is therefore the circular cylinder with radius 1 whose axis is the z-axis. See Figure 9.

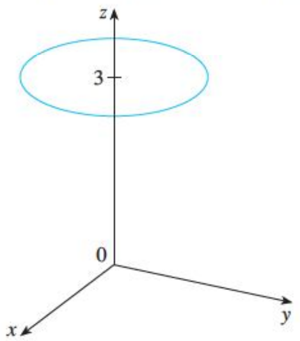


FIGURE 8
The circle $x^2 + y^2 = 1$, $z = 3$

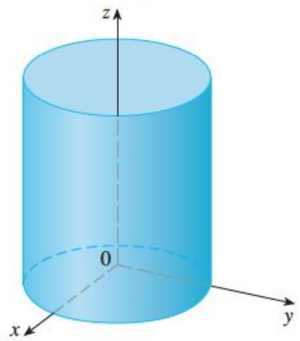


FIGURE 9
The cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 1$

V EXAMPLE 3 Describe and sketch the surface in $\mathbb{R}^3$ represented by the equation $y = x$.

SOLUTION The equation represents the set of all points in $\mathbb{R}^3$ whose x- and y-coordinates are equal, that is, $\{(x, x, z) \mid x \in \mathbb{R}, z \in \mathbb{R}\}$. This is a vertical plane that intersects the xy-plane in the line $y = x$, $z = 0$. The portion of this plane that lies in the first octant is sketched in Figure 10.

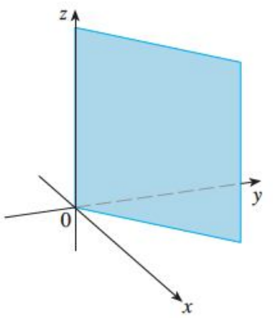


FIGURE 10
The plane $y = x$

The familiar formula for the distance between two points in a plane is easily extended to the following three-dimensional formula.

Distance Formula in Three Dimensions The distance $|P_1P_2|$ between the points $P_1(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ and $P_2(x_2, y_2, z_2)$ is

$$|P_1P_2| = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 + (z_2 - z_1)^2}$$

To see why this formula is true, we construct a rectangular box as in Figure 11, where P_1 and P_2 are opposite vertices and the faces of the box are parallel to the coordinate planes. If $A(x_2, y_1, z_1)$ and $B(x_2, y_2, z_1)$ are the vertices of the box indicated in the figure, then

$$|P_1A| = |x_2 - x_1| \qquad |AB| = |y_2 - y_1| \qquad |BP_2| = |z_2 - z_1|$$

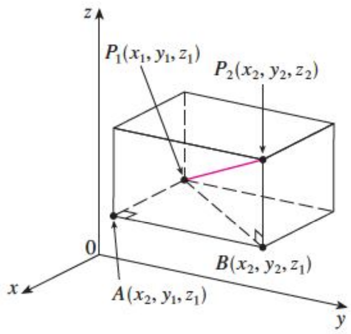


FIGURE 11

Because triangles P_1BP_2 and P_1AB are both right-angled, two applications of the Pythagorean Theorem give

$$|P_1P_2|^2 = |P_1B|^2 + |BP_2|^2$$

and

$$|P_1B|^2 = |P_1A|^2 + |AB|^2$$

Combining these equations, we get

$$\begin{aligned} |P_1P_2|^2 &= |P_1A|^2 + |AB|^2 + |BP_2|^2 \\ &= |x_2 - x_1|^2 + |y_2 - y_1|^2 + |z_2 - z_1|^2 \\ &= (x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 + (z_2 - z_1)^2 \end{aligned}$$

Therefore

$$|P_1P_2| = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 + (z_2 - z_1)^2}$$

EXAMPLE 4 The distance from the point $P(2, -1, 7)$ to the point $Q(1, -3, 5)$ is

$$|PQ| = \sqrt{(1 - 2)^2 + (-3 + 1)^2 + (5 - 7)^2} = \sqrt{1 + 4 + 4} = 3$$

V EXAMPLE 5 Find an equation of a sphere with radius r and center $C(h, k, l)$.

SOLUTION By definition, a sphere is the set of all points $P(x, y, z)$ whose distance from C is r. (See Figure 12.) Thus P is on the sphere if and only if $|PC| = r$. Squaring both sides, we have $|PC|^2 = r^2$ or

$$(x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 + (z - l)^2 = r^2$$

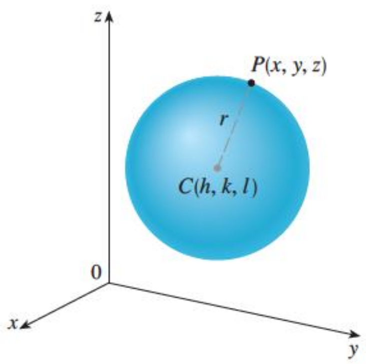


FIGURE 12

The result of Example 5 is worth remembering.

Equation of a Sphere An equation of a sphere with center $C(h, k, l)$ and radius r is

$$(x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 + (z - l)^2 = r^2$$

In particular, if the center is the origin O, then an equation of the sphere is

$$x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = r^2$$

EXAMPLE 6 Show that $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 + 4x - 6y + 2z + 6 = 0$ is the equation of a sphere, and find its center and radius.

SOLUTION We can rewrite the given equation in the form of an equation of a sphere if we complete squares:

$$(x^2 + 4x + 4) + (y^2 - 6y + 9) + (z^2 + 2z + 1) = -6 + 4 + 9 + 1$$
$$(x + 2)^2 + (y - 3)^2 + (z + 1)^2 = 8$$

Comparing this equation with the standard form, we see that it is the equation of a sphere with center $(-2, 3, -1)$ and radius $\sqrt{8} = 2\sqrt{2}$.

EXAMPLE 7 What region in $\mathbb{R}^3$ is represented by the following inequalities?

$$1 \leqslant x^2 + y^2 + z^2 \leqslant 4 \qquad z \leqslant 0$$

SOLUTION The inequalities

$$1 \leqslant x^2 + y^2 + z^2 \leqslant 4$$

can be rewritten as

$$1 \leqslant \sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2} \leqslant 2$$

so they represent the points (x, y, z) whose distance from the origin is at least 1 and at most 2. But we are also given that $z \leqslant 0$, so the points lie on or below the xy-plane. Thus the given inequalities represent the region that lies between (or on) the spheres $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 1$ and $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 4$ and beneath (or on) the xy-plane. It is sketched in Figure 13.

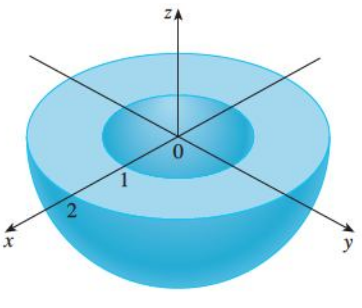


FIGURE 13

12.1 Exercises

1. Suppose you start at the origin, move along the x-axis a distance of 4 units in the positive direction, and then move downward a distance of 3 units. What are the coordinates of your position?

2. Sketch the points $(0, 5, 2)$, $(4, 0, -1)$, $(2, 4, 6)$, and $(1, -1, 2)$ on a single set of coordinate axes.

3. Which of the points $A(-4, 0, -1)$, $B(3, 1, -5)$, and $C(2, 4, 6)$ is closest to the yz-plane? Which point lies in the xz-plane?

4. What are the projections of the point $(2, 3, 5)$ on the xy-, yz-, and xz-planes? Draw a rectangular box with the origin and $(2, 3, 5)$ as opposite vertices and with its faces parallel to the coordinate planes. Label all vertices of the box. Find the length of the diagonal of the box.

5. Describe and sketch the surface in $\mathbb{R}^3$ represented by the equation $x + y = 2$.

6. (a) What does the equation $x = 4$ represent in $\mathbb{R}^2$? What does it represent in $\mathbb{R}^3$? Illustrate with sketches.
   (b) What does the equation $y = 3$ represent in $\mathbb{R}^3$? What does $z = 5$ represent? What does the pair of equations $y = 3$, $z = 5$ represent? In other words, describe the set of points (x, y, z) such that $y = 3$ and $z = 5$. Illustrate with a sketch.

7–8 Find the lengths of the sides of the triangle PQR. Is it a right triangle? Is it an isosceles triangle?

7. $P(3, -2, -3)$, $Q(7, 0, 1)$, $R(1, 2, 1)$

8. $P(2, -1, 0)$, $Q(4, 1, 1)$, $R(4, -5, 4)$

9. Determine whether the points lie on straight line.
   (a) $A(2, 4, 2)$, $B(3, 7, -2)$, $C(1, 3, 3)$
   (b) $D(0, -5, 5)$, $E(1, -2, 4)$, $F(3, 4, 2)$

10. Find the distance from $(4, -2, 6)$ to each of the following.
    (a) The xy-plane (b) The yz-plane
    (c) The xz-plane (d) The x-axis
    (e) The y-axis (f) The z-axis

11. Find an equation of the sphere with center $(-3, 2, 5)$ and radius 4. What is the intersection of this sphere with the yz-plane?

12. Find an equation of the sphere with center $(2, -6, 4)$ and radius 5. Describe its intersection with each of the coordinate planes.

13. Find an equation of the sphere that passes through the point $(4, 3, -1)$ and has center $(3, 8, 1)$.

14. Find an equation of the sphere that passes through the origin and whose center is $(1, 2, 3)$.

15–18 Show that the equation represents a sphere, and find its center and radius.

15. $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 - 2x - 4y + 8z = 15$

16. $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 + 8x - 6y + 2z + 17 = 0$

17. $2x^2 + 2y^2 + 2z^2 = 8x - 24z + 1$

18. $3x^2 + 3y^2 + 3z^2 = 10 + 6y + 12z$

1. Homework Hints available at stewartcalculus.com

19. (a) Prove that the midpoint of the line segment from $P_1(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ to $P_2(x_2, y_2, z_2)$ is

$$\left(\frac{x_1 + x_2}{2}, \frac{y_1 + y_2}{2}, \frac{z_1 + z_2}{2}\right)$$

(b) Find the lengths of the medians of the triangle with vertices $A(1, 2, 3)$, $B(-2, 0, 5)$, and $C(4, 1, 5)$.

20. Find an equation of a sphere if one of its diameters has endpoints $(2, 1, 4)$ and $(4, 3, 10)$.

21. Find equations of the spheres with center $(2, -3, 6)$ that touch (a) the xy-plane, (b) the yz-plane, (c) the xz-plane.

22. Find an equation of the largest sphere with center $(5, 4, 9)$ that is contained in the first octant.

23–34 Describe in words the region of $\mathbb{R}^3$ represented by the equations or inequalities.

23. $x = 5$

24. $y = -2$

25. $y < 8$

26. $x \geqslant -3$

27. $0 \leqslant z \leqslant 6$

28. $z^2 = 1$

29. $x^2 + y^2 = 4, \quad z = -1$

30. $y^2 + z^2 = 16$

31. $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 \leqslant 3$

32. $x = z$

33. $x^2 + z^2 \leqslant 9$

34. $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 > 2z$

35–38 Write inequalities to describe the region.

35. The region between the yz-plane and the vertical plane $x = 5$

36. The solid cylinder that lies on or below the plane $z = 8$ and on or above the disk in the xy-plane with center the origin and radius 2

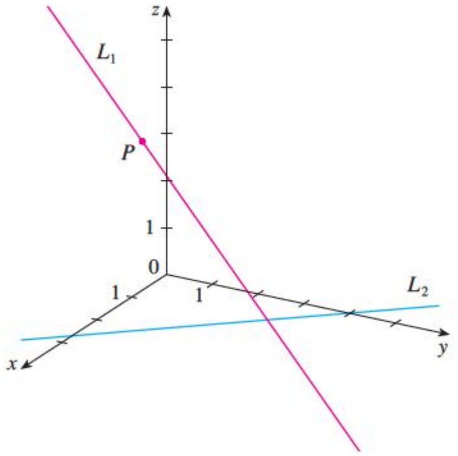
37. The region consisting of all points between (but not on) the spheres of radius r and R centered at the origin, where $r < R$

38. The solid upper hemisphere of the sphere of radius 2 centered at the origin

39. The figure shows a line L_1 in space and a second line L_2, which is the projection of L_1 on the xy-plane. (In other words, the points on L_2 are directly beneath, or above, the points on L_1.)

(a) Find the coordinates of the point P on the line L_1.

(b) Locate on the diagram the points A, B, and C, where the line L_1 intersects the xy-plane, the yz-plane, and the xz-plane, respectively.



40. Consider the points P such that the distance from P to $A(-1, 5, 3)$ is twice the distance from P to $B(6, 2, -2)$. Show that the set of all such points is a sphere, and find its center and radius.

41. Find an equation of the set of all points equidistant from the points $A(-1, 5, 3)$ and $B(6, 2, -2)$. Describe the set.

42. Find the volume of the solid that lies inside both of the spheres

$$x^2 + y^2 + z^2 + 4x - 2y + 4z + 5 = 0$$

and $$x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 4$$

43. Find the distance between the spheres $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 4$ and $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 4x + 4y + 4z - 11$.

44. Describe and sketch a solid with the following properties. When illuminated by rays parallel to the z-axis, its shadow is a circular disk. If the rays are parallel to the y-axis, its shadow is a square. If the rays are parallel to the x-axis, its shadow is an isosceles triangle.

12.2 Vectors

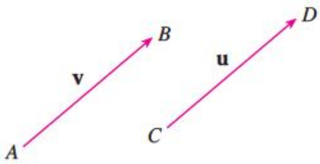


FIGURE 1
Equivalent vectors

The term **vector** is used by scientists to indicate a quantity (such as displacement or velocity or force) that has both magnitude and direction. A vector is often represented by an arrow or a directed line segment. The length of the arrow represents the magnitude of the vector and the arrow points in the direction of the vector. We denote a vector by printing a letter in boldface (**v**) or by putting an arrow above the letter ($\vec{v}$).

For instance, suppose a particle moves along a line segment from point A to point B. The corresponding **displacement vector v**, shown in Figure 1, has **initial point** A (the tail) and **terminal point** B (the tip) and we indicate this by writing $\mathbf{v} = \overrightarrow{AB}$. Notice that the vector $\mathbf{u} = \overrightarrow{CD}$ has the same length and the same direction as $\mathbf{v}$ even though it is in a different position. We say that $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are **equivalent** (or **equal**) and we write $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{v}$. The **zero vector**, denoted by $\mathbf{0}$, has length 0. It is the only vector with no specific direction.

Combining Vectors

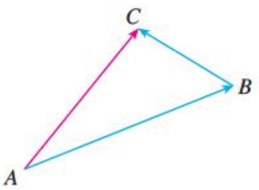


FIGURE 2

Suppose a particle moves from A to B, so its displacement vector is $\overrightarrow{AB}$. Then the particle changes direction and moves from B to C, with displacement vector $\overrightarrow{BC}$ as in Figure 2. The combined effect of these displacements is that the particle has moved from A to C. The resulting displacement vector $\overrightarrow{AC}$ is called the *sum* of $\overrightarrow{AB}$ and $\overrightarrow{BC}$ and we write

$$\overrightarrow{AC} = \overrightarrow{AB} + \overrightarrow{BC}$$

In general, if we start with vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$, we first move $\mathbf{v}$ so that its tail coincides with the tip of $\mathbf{u}$ and define the sum of $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ as follows.

Definition of Vector Addition If $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are vectors positioned so the initial point of $\mathbf{v}$ is at the terminal point of $\mathbf{u}$, then the **sum** $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$ is the vector from the initial point of $\mathbf{u}$ to the terminal point of $\mathbf{v}$.

The definition of vector addition is illustrated in Figure 3. You can see why this definition is sometimes called the **Triangle Law**.

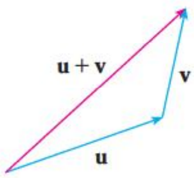


FIGURE 3 The Triangle Law

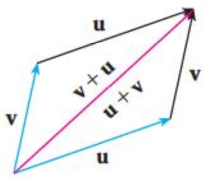


FIGURE 4 The Parallelogram Law

In Figure 4 we start with the same vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ as in Figure 3 and draw another copy of $\mathbf{v}$ with the same initial point as $\mathbf{u}$. Completing the parallelogram, we see that $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u}$. This also gives another way to construct the sum: If we place $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ so they start at the same point, then $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$ lies along the diagonal of the parallelogram with $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ as sides. (This is called the **Parallelogram Law**.)

FIGURE 5

V EXAMPLE 1 Draw the sum of the vectors $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ shown in Figure 5.

SOLUTION First we translate $\mathbf{b}$ and place its tail at the tip of $\mathbf{a}$, being careful to draw a copy of $\mathbf{b}$ that has the same length and direction. Then we draw the vector $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$ [see Figure 6(a)] starting at the initial point of $\mathbf{a}$ and ending at the terminal point of the copy of $\mathbf{b}$.

Alternatively, we could place $\mathbf{b}$ so it starts where $\mathbf{a}$ starts and construct $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$ by the Parallelogram Law as in Figure 6(b).

TEC Visual 12.2 shows how the Triangle and Parallelogram Laws work for various vectors **a** and **b**.

FIGURE 6 (a) (b)

It is possible to multiply a vector by a real number c. (In this context we call the real number c a **scalar** to distinguish it from a vector.) For instance, we want $2\mathbf{v}$ to be the same vector as $\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{v}$, which has the same direction as $\mathbf{v}$ but is twice as long. In general, we multiply a vector by a scalar as follows.

> **Definition of Scalar Multiplication** If c is a scalar and $\mathbf{v}$ is a vector, then the **scalar multiple** $c\mathbf{v}$ is the vector whose length is $|c|$ times the length of $\mathbf{v}$ and whose direction is the same as $\mathbf{v}$ if $c > 0$ and is opposite to $\mathbf{v}$ if $c < 0$. If $c = 0$ or $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$, then $c\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$.

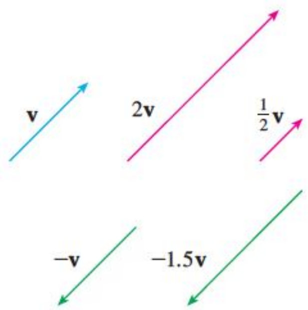


FIGURE 7
Scalar multiples of **v**

This definition is illustrated in Figure 7. We see that real numbers work like scaling factors here; that's why we call them scalars. Notice that two nonzero vectors are **parallel** if they are scalar multiples of one another. In particular, the vector $-\mathbf{v} = (-1)\mathbf{v}$ has the same length as $\mathbf{v}$ but points in the opposite direction. We call it the **negative** of $\mathbf{v}$.

By the **difference** $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$ of two vectors we mean

$$\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{u} + (-\mathbf{v})$$

So we can construct $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$ by first drawing the negative of $\mathbf{v}$, $-\mathbf{v}$, and then adding it to $\mathbf{u}$ by the Parallelogram Law as in Figure 8(a). Alternatively, since $\mathbf{v} + (\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{u}$, the vector $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$, when added to $\mathbf{v}$, gives $\mathbf{u}$. So we could construct $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$ as in Figure 8(b) by means of the Triangle Law.

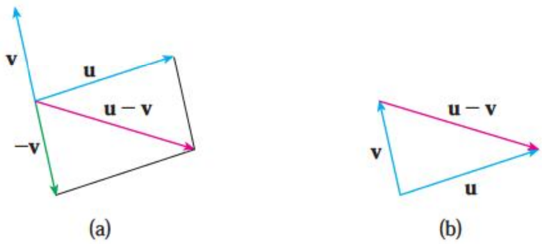


FIGURE 8
Drawing **u** − **v**

FIGURE 9

EXAMPLE 2 If $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ are the vectors shown in Figure 9, draw $\mathbf{a} - 2\mathbf{b}$.

SOLUTION We first draw the vector $-2\mathbf{b}$ pointing in the direction opposite to $\mathbf{b}$ and twice as long. We place it with its tail at the tip of $\mathbf{a}$ and then use the Triangle Law to draw $\mathbf{a} + (-2\mathbf{b})$ as in Figure 10. ■

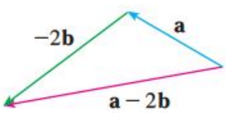


FIGURE 10

Components

For some purposes it's best to introduce a coordinate system and treat vectors algebraically. If we place the initial point of a vector $\mathbf{a}$ at the origin of a rectangular coordinate system, then the terminal point of $\mathbf{a}$ has coordinates of the form (a_1, a_2) or (a_1, a_2, a_3), depending on whether our coordinate system is two- or three-dimensional (see Figure 11).

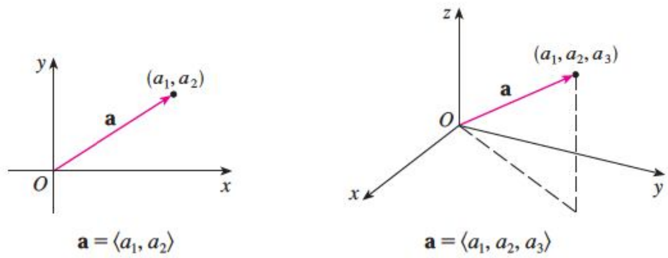


FIGURE 11

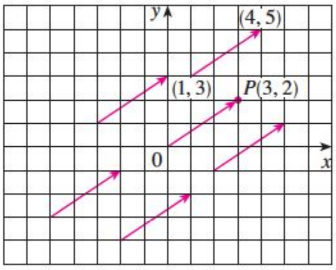


FIGURE 12
Representations of the vector $\mathbf{a} = \langle 3, 2 \rangle$

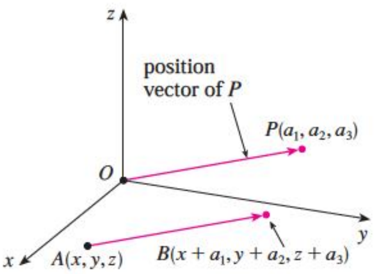


FIGURE 13
Representations of $\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2, a_3 \rangle$

These coordinates are called the **components** of **a** and we write

$$\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2 \rangle \qquad \text{or} \qquad \mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2, a_3 \rangle$$

We use the notation $\langle a_1, a_2 \rangle$ for the ordered pair that refers to a vector so as not to confuse it with the ordered pair (a_1, a_2) that refers to a point in the plane.

For instance, the vectors shown in Figure 12 are all equivalent to the vector $\overrightarrow{OP} = \langle 3, 2 \rangle$ whose terminal point is $P(3, 2)$. What they have in common is that the terminal point is reached from the initial point by a displacement of three units to the right and two upward. We can think of all these geometric vectors as **representations** of the algebraic vector $\mathbf{a} = \langle 3, 2 \rangle$. The particular representation $\overrightarrow{OP}$ from the origin to the point $P(3, 2)$ is called the **position vector** of the point P.

In three dimensions, the vector $\mathbf{a} = \overrightarrow{OP} = \langle a_1, a_2, a_3 \rangle$ is the **position vector** of the point $P(a_1, a_2, a_3)$. (See Figure 13.) Let's consider any other representation $\overrightarrow{AB}$ of **a**, where the initial point is $A(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ and the terminal point is $B(x_2, y_2, z_2)$. Then we must have $x_1 + a_1 = x_2$, $y_1 + a_2 = y_2$, and $z_1 + a_3 = z_2$ and so $a_1 = x_2 - x_1$, $a_2 = y_2 - y_1$, and $a_3 = z_2 - z_1$. Thus we have the following result.

> **1** Given the points $A(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ and $B(x_2, y_2, z_2)$, the vector **a** with representation $\overrightarrow{AB}$ is
>
> $$\mathbf{a} = \langle x_2 - x_1, y_2 - y_1, z_2 - z_1 \rangle$$

V EXAMPLE 3 Find the vector represented by the directed line segment with initial point $A(2, -3, 4)$ and terminal point $B(-2, 1, 1)$.

SOLUTION By **1**, the vector corresponding to $\overrightarrow{AB}$ is

$$\mathbf{a} = \langle -2 - 2, 1 - (-3), 1 - 4 \rangle = \langle -4, 4, -3 \rangle$$

The **magnitude** or **length** of the vector **v** is the length of any of its representations and is denoted by the symbol $|\mathbf{v}|$ or $\|\mathbf{v}\|$. By using the distance formula to compute the length of a segment OP, we obtain the following formulas.

> The length of the two-dimensional vector $\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2 \rangle$ is
>
> $$|\mathbf{a}| = \sqrt{a_1^2 + a_2^2}$$
>
> The length of the three-dimensional vector $\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2, a_3 \rangle$ is
>
> $$|\mathbf{a}| = \sqrt{a_1^2 + a_2^2 + a_3^2}$$

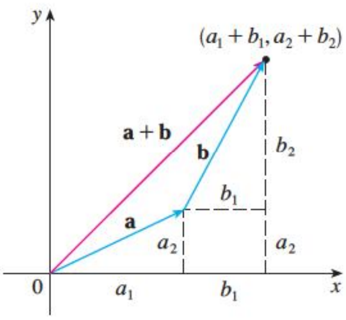


FIGURE 14

How do we add vectors algebraically? Figure 14 shows that if $\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{b} = \langle b_1, b_2 \rangle$, then the sum is $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} = \langle a_1 + b_1, a_2 + b_2 \rangle$, at least for the case where the components are positive. In other words, *to add algebraic vectors we add their components*. Similarly, *to subtract vectors we subtract components*. From the similar triangles in

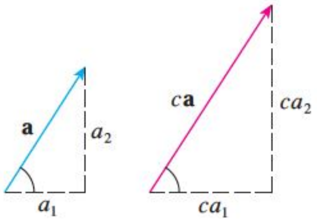


FIGURE 15

Figure 15 we see that the components of $c\mathbf{a}$ are ca_1 and ca_2. So *to multiply a vector by a scalar we multiply each component by that scalar.*

If $\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{b} = \langle b_1, b_2 \rangle$, then

$$\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} = \langle a_1 + b_1, a_2 + b_2 \rangle \qquad \mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b} = \langle a_1 - b_1, a_2 - b_2 \rangle$$

$$c\mathbf{a} = \langle ca_1, ca_2 \rangle$$

Similarly, for three-dimensional vectors,

$$\langle a_1, a_2, a_3 \rangle + \langle b_1, b_2, b_3 \rangle = \langle a_1 + b_1, a_2 + b_2, a_3 + b_3 \rangle$$
$$\langle a_1, a_2, a_3 \rangle - \langle b_1, b_2, b_3 \rangle = \langle a_1 - b_1, a_2 - b_2, a_3 - b_3 \rangle$$
$$c\langle a_1, a_2, a_3 \rangle = \langle ca_1, ca_2, ca_3 \rangle$$

V EXAMPLE 4 If $\mathbf{a} = \langle 4, 0, 3 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{b} = \langle -2, 1, 5 \rangle$, find $|\mathbf{a}|$ and the vectors $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$, $\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}$, $3\mathbf{b}$, and $2\mathbf{a} + 5\mathbf{b}$.

SOLUTION

$$|\mathbf{a}| = \sqrt{4^2 + 0^2 + 3^2} = \sqrt{25} = 5$$

$$\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} = \langle 4, 0, 3 \rangle + \langle -2, 1, 5 \rangle$$
$$= \langle 4 + (-2), 0 + 1, 3 + 5 \rangle = \langle 2, 1, 8 \rangle$$

$$\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b} = \langle 4, 0, 3 \rangle - \langle -2, 1, 5 \rangle$$
$$= \langle 4 - (-2), 0 - 1, 3 - 5 \rangle = \langle 6, -1, -2 \rangle$$

$$3\mathbf{b} = 3\langle -2, 1, 5 \rangle = \langle 3(-2), 3(1), 3(5) \rangle = \langle -6, 3, 15 \rangle$$

$$2\mathbf{a} + 5\mathbf{b} = 2\langle 4, 0, 3 \rangle + 5\langle -2, 1, 5 \rangle$$
$$= \langle 8, 0, 6 \rangle + \langle -10, 5, 25 \rangle = \langle -2, 5, 31 \rangle$$

We denote by V_2 the set of all two-dimensional vectors and by V_3 the set of all three-dimensional vectors. More generally, we will later need to consider the set V_n of all n-dimensional vectors. An n-dimensional vector is an ordered n-tuple:

$$\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n \rangle$$

where $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$ are real numbers that are called the components of $\mathbf{a}$. Addition and scalar multiplication are defined in terms of components just as for the cases $n = 2$ and $n = 3$.

Vectors in n dimensions are used to list various quantities in an organized way. For instance, the components of a six-dimensional vector

$$\mathbf{p} = \langle p_1, p_2, p_3, p_4, p_5, p_6 \rangle$$

might represent the prices of six different ingredients required to make a particular product. Four-dimensional vectors $\langle x, y, z, t \rangle$ are used in relativity theory, where the first three components specify a position in space and the fourth represents time.

Properties of Vectors If $\mathbf{a}$, $\mathbf{b}$, and $\mathbf{c}$ are vectors in V_n and c and d are scalars, then

1. $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a}$

2. $\mathbf{a} + (\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}) = (\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) + \mathbf{c}$

3. $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{0} = \mathbf{a}$

4. $\mathbf{a} + (-\mathbf{a}) = \mathbf{0}$

5. $c(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) = c\mathbf{a} + c\mathbf{b}$

6. $(c + d)\mathbf{a} = c\mathbf{a} + d\mathbf{a}$

7. $(cd)\mathbf{a} = c(d\mathbf{a})$

8. $1\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{a}$

These eight properties of vectors can be readily verified either geometrically or algebraically. For instance, Property 1 can be seen from Figure 4 (it's equivalent to the Parallelogram Law) or as follows for the case $n = 2$:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} &= \langle a_1, a_2 \rangle + \langle b_1, b_2 \rangle = \langle a_1 + b_1, a_2 + b_2 \rangle \\ &= \langle b_1 + a_1, b_2 + a_2 \rangle = \langle b_1, b_2 \rangle + \langle a_1, a_2 \rangle \\ &= \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a}\end{aligned}$$

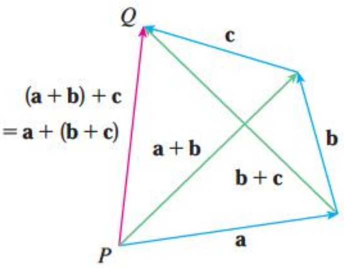


FIGURE 16

We can see why Property 2 (the associative law) is true by looking at Figure 16 and applying the Triangle Law several times: The vector $\overrightarrow{PQ}$ is obtained either by first constructing $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$ and then adding $\mathbf{c}$ or by adding $\mathbf{a}$ to the vector $\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}$.

Three vectors in V_3 play a special role. Let

$$\mathbf{i} = \langle 1, 0, 0 \rangle \qquad \mathbf{j} = \langle 0, 1, 0 \rangle \qquad \mathbf{k} = \langle 0, 0, 1 \rangle$$

These vectors $\mathbf{i}$, $\mathbf{j}$, and $\mathbf{k}$ are called the **standard basis vectors**. They have length 1 and point in the directions of the positive x-, y-, and z-axes. Similarly, in two dimensions we define $\mathbf{i} = \langle 1, 0 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{j} = \langle 0, 1 \rangle$. (See Figure 17.)

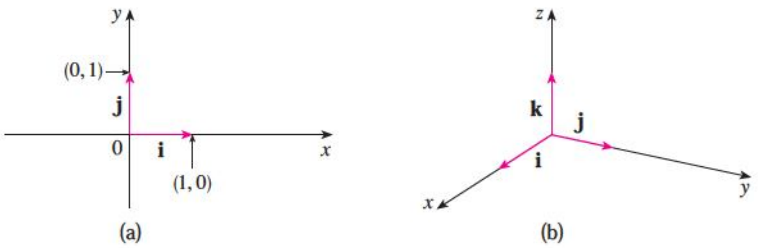


FIGURE 17
Standard basis vectors in V_2 and V_3

If $\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2, a_3 \rangle$, then we can write

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{a} &= \langle a_1, a_2, a_3 \rangle = \langle a_1, 0, 0 \rangle + \langle 0, a_2, 0 \rangle + \langle 0, 0, a_3 \rangle \\ &= a_1 \langle 1, 0, 0 \rangle + a_2 \langle 0, 1, 0 \rangle + a_3 \langle 0, 0, 1 \rangle\end{aligned}$$

2 $$\mathbf{a} = a_1 \mathbf{i} + a_2 \mathbf{j} + a_3 \mathbf{k}$$

Thus any vector in V_3 can be expressed in terms of $\mathbf{i}$, $\mathbf{j}$, and $\mathbf{k}$. For instance,

$$\langle 1, -2, 6 \rangle = \mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + 6\mathbf{k}$$

Similarly, in two dimensions, we can write

3 $$\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2 \rangle = a_1 \mathbf{i} + a_2 \mathbf{j}$$

See Figure 18 for the geometric interpretation of Equations 3 and 2 and compare with Figure 17.

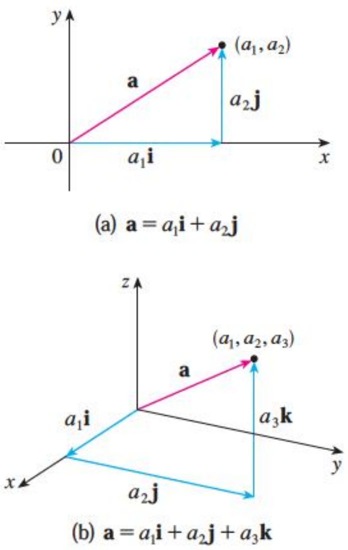


FIGURE 18

EXAMPLE 5 If $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{b} = 4\mathbf{i} + 7\mathbf{k}$, express the vector $2\mathbf{a} + 3\mathbf{b}$ in terms of $\mathbf{i}$, $\mathbf{j}$, and $\mathbf{k}$.

SOLUTION Using Properties 1, 2, 5, 6, and 7 of vectors, we have

$$\begin{aligned} 2\mathbf{a} + 3\mathbf{b} &= 2(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}) + 3(4\mathbf{i} + 7\mathbf{k}) \\ &= 2\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} - 6\mathbf{k} + 12\mathbf{i} + 21\mathbf{k} = 14\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} + 15\mathbf{k} \end{aligned}$$

Gibbs

Josiah Willard Gibbs (1839–1903), a professor of mathematical physics at Yale College, published the first book on vectors, *Vector Analysis*, in 1881. More complicated objects, called quaternions, had earlier been invented by Hamilton as mathematical tools for describing space, but they weren't easy for scientists to use. Quaternions have a scalar part and a vector part. Gibb's idea was to use the vector part separately. Maxwell and Heaviside had similar ideas, but Gibb's approach has proved to be the most convenient way to study space.

A **unit vector** is a vector whose length is 1. For instance, $\mathbf{i}$, $\mathbf{j}$, and $\mathbf{k}$ are all unit vectors. In general, if $\mathbf{a} \neq \mathbf{0}$, then the unit vector that has the same direction as $\mathbf{a}$ is

4
$$\mathbf{u} = \frac{1}{|\mathbf{a}|}\mathbf{a} = \frac{\mathbf{a}}{|\mathbf{a}|}$$

In order to verify this, we let $c = 1/|\mathbf{a}|$. Then $\mathbf{u} = c\mathbf{a}$ and c is a positive scalar, so $\mathbf{u}$ has the same direction as $\mathbf{a}$. Also

$$|\mathbf{u}| = |c\mathbf{a}| = |c||\mathbf{a}| = \frac{1}{|\mathbf{a}|}|\mathbf{a}| = 1$$

EXAMPLE 6 Find the unit vector in the direction of the vector $2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$.

SOLUTION The given vector has length

$$|2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}| = \sqrt{2^2 + (-1)^2 + (-2)^2} = \sqrt{9} = 3$$

so, by Equation 4, the unit vector with the same direction is

$$\tfrac{1}{3}(2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}) = \tfrac{2}{3}\mathbf{i} - \tfrac{1}{3}\mathbf{j} - \tfrac{2}{3}\mathbf{k}$$

Applications

Vectors are useful in many aspects of physics and engineering. In Chapter 13 we will see how they describe the velocity and acceleration of objects moving in space. Here we look at forces.

A force is represented by a vector because it has both a magnitude (measured in pounds or newtons) and a direction. If several forces are acting on an object, the **resultant force** experienced by the object is the vector sum of these forces.

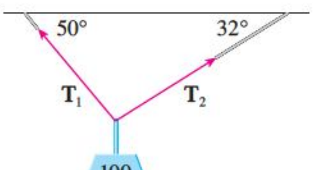


FIGURE 19

EXAMPLE 7 A 100-lb weight hangs from two wires as shown in Figure 19. Find the tensions (forces) $\mathbf{T}_1$ and $\mathbf{T}_2$ in both wires and the magnitudes of the tensions.

SOLUTION We first express $\mathbf{T}_1$ and $\mathbf{T}_2$ in terms of their horizontal and vertical components. From Figure 20 we see that

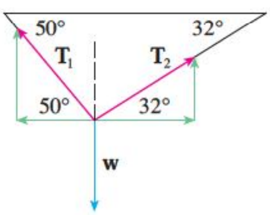


FIGURE 20

5
$$\mathbf{T}_1 = -|\mathbf{T}_1|\cos 50^\circ\,\mathbf{i} + |\mathbf{T}_1|\sin 50^\circ\,\mathbf{j}$$

6
$$\mathbf{T}_2 = |\mathbf{T}_2|\cos 32^\circ\,\mathbf{i} + |\mathbf{T}_2|\sin 32^\circ\,\mathbf{j}$$

The resultant $\mathbf{T}_1 + \mathbf{T}_2$ of the tensions counterbalances the weight $\mathbf{w}$ and so we must have

$$\mathbf{T}_1 + \mathbf{T}_2 = -\mathbf{w} = 100\mathbf{j}$$

Thus

$$\left(-|\mathbf{T}_1|\cos 50^\circ + |\mathbf{T}_2|\cos 32^\circ\right)\mathbf{i} + \left(|\mathbf{T}_1|\sin 50^\circ + |\mathbf{T}_2|\sin 32^\circ\right)\mathbf{j} = 100\mathbf{j}$$

Equating components, we get

$$-|\mathbf{T}_1|\cos 50° + |\mathbf{T}_2|\cos 32° = 0$$
$$|\mathbf{T}_1|\sin 50° + |\mathbf{T}_2|\sin 32° = 100$$

Solving the first of these equations for $|\mathbf{T}_2|$ and substituting into the second, we get

$$|\mathbf{T}_1|\sin 50° + \frac{|\mathbf{T}_1|\cos 50°}{\cos 32°}\sin 32° = 100$$

So the magnitudes of the tensions are

$$|\mathbf{T}_1| = \frac{100}{\sin 50° + \tan 32° \cos 50°} \approx 85.64 \text{ lb}$$

and $$|\mathbf{T}_2| = \frac{|\mathbf{T}_1|\cos 50°}{\cos 32°} \approx 64.91 \text{ lb}$$

Substituting these values in [5] and [6], we obtain the tension vectors

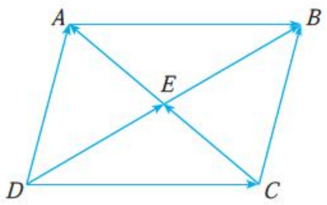
$$\mathbf{T}_1 \approx -55.05\,\mathbf{i} + 65.60\,\mathbf{j} \qquad \mathbf{T}_2 \approx 55.05\,\mathbf{i} + 34.40\,\mathbf{j}$$

12.2 Exercises

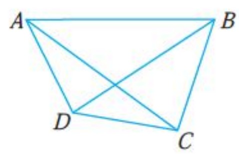
1. Are the following quantities vectors or scalars? Explain.
   (a) The cost of a theater ticket
   (b) The current in a river
   (c) The initial flight path from Houston to Dallas
   (d) The population of the world

2. What is the relationship between the point (4, 7) and the vector $\langle 4, 7 \rangle$? Illustrate with a sketch.

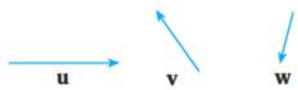
3. Name all the equal vectors in the parallelogram shown.



4. Write each combination of vectors as a single vector.
   (a) $\overrightarrow{AB} + \overrightarrow{BC}$ (b) $\overrightarrow{CD} + \overrightarrow{DB}$
   (c) $\overrightarrow{DB} - \overrightarrow{AB}$ (d) $\overrightarrow{DC} + \overrightarrow{CA} + \overrightarrow{AB}$

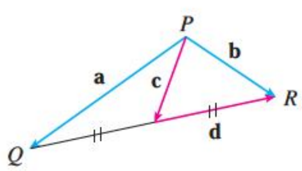


5. Copy the vectors in the figure and use them to draw the following vectors.
   (a) $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$ (b) $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{w}$
   (c) $\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}$ (d) $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$
   (e) $\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u} + \mathbf{w}$ (f) $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{w} - \mathbf{v}$



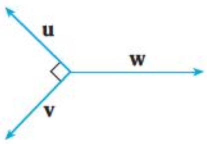
6. Copy the vectors in the figure and use them to draw the following vectors.
   (a) $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$ (b) $\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}$
   (c) $\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{a}$ (d) $-3\mathbf{b}$
   (e) $\mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{b}$ (f) $2\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}$

7. In the figure, the tip of $\mathbf{c}$ and the tail of $\mathbf{d}$ are both the midpoint of QR. Express $\mathbf{c}$ and $\mathbf{d}$ in terms of $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$.



1. Homework Hints available at stewartcalculus.com

8. If the vectors in the figure satisfy $|\mathbf{u}| = |\mathbf{v}| = 1$ and $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w} = \mathbf{0}$, what is $|\mathbf{w}|$?



9–14 Find a vector $\mathbf{a}$ with representation given by the directed line segment $\overrightarrow{AB}$. Draw $\overrightarrow{AB}$ and the equivalent representation starting at the origin.

9. $A(-1, 1)$, $B(3, 2)$ **10.** $A(-4, -1)$, $B(1, 2)$

11. $A(-1, 3)$, $B(2, 2)$ **12.** $A(2, 1)$, $B(0, 6)$

13. $A(0, 3, 1)$, $B(2, 3, -1)$ **14.** $A(4, 0, -2)$, $B(4, 2, 1)$

15–18 Find the sum of the given vectors and illustrate geometrically.

15. $\langle -1, 4\rangle$, $\langle 6, -2\rangle$ **16.** $\langle 3, -1\rangle$, $\langle -1, 5\rangle$

17. $\langle 3, 0, 1\rangle$, $\langle 0, 8, 0\rangle$ **18.** $\langle 1, 3, -2\rangle$, $\langle 0, 0, 6\rangle$

19–22 Find $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$, $2\mathbf{a} + 3\mathbf{b}$, $|\mathbf{a}|$, and $|\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}|$.

19. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 5, -12\rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle -3, -6\rangle$

20. $\mathbf{a} = 4\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}$

21. $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = -2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 5\mathbf{k}$

22. $\mathbf{a} = 2\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$

23–25 Find a unit vector that has the same direction as the given vector.

23. $-3\mathbf{i} + 7\mathbf{j}$ **24.** $\langle -4, 2, 4\rangle$

25. $8\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k}$

26. Find a vector that has the same direction as $\langle -2, 4, 2\rangle$ but has length 6.

27–28 What is the angle between the given vector and the positive direction of the x-axis?

27. $\mathbf{i} + \sqrt{3}\,\mathbf{j}$ **28.** $8\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{j}$

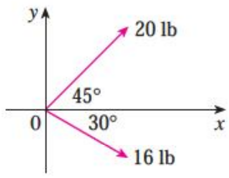
29. If $\mathbf{v}$ lies in the first quadrant and makes an angle $\pi/3$ with the positive x-axis and $|\mathbf{v}| = 4$, find $\mathbf{v}$ in component form.

30. If a child pulls a sled through the snow on a level path with a force of 50 N exerted at an angle of 38° above the horizontal, find the horizontal and vertical components of the force.

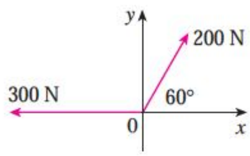
31. A quarterback throws a football with angle of elevation 40° and speed 60 ft/s. Find the horizontal and vertical components of the velocity vector.

32–33 Find the magnitude of the resultant force and the angle it makes with the positive x-axis.

32.



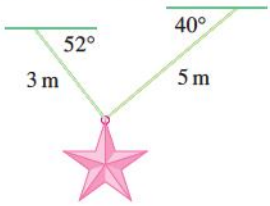
33.



34. The magnitude of a velocity vector is called *speed*. Suppose that a wind is blowing from the direction N45°W at a speed of 50 km/h. (This means that the direction from which the wind blows is 45° west of the northerly direction.) A pilot is steering a plane in the direction N60°E at an airspeed (speed in still air) of 250 km/h. The *true course*, or *track*, of the plane is the direction of the resultant of the velocity vectors of the plane and the wind. The *ground speed* of the plane is the magnitude of the resultant. Find the true course and the ground speed of the plane.

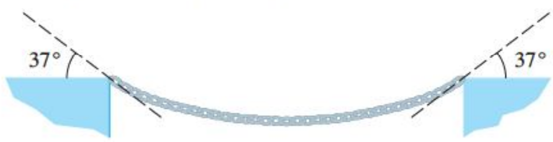
35. A woman walks due west on the deck of a ship at 3 mi/h. The ship is moving north at a speed of 22 mi/h. Find the speed and direction of the woman relative to the surface of the water.

36. Ropes 3 m and 5 m in length are fastened to a holiday decoration that is suspended over a town square. The decoration has a mass of 5 kg. The ropes, fastened at different heights, make angles of 52° and 40° with the horizontal. Find the tension in each wire and the magnitude of each tension.



37. A clothesline is tied between two poles, 8 m apart. The line is quite taut and has negligible sag. When a wet shirt with a mass of 0.8 kg is hung at the middle of the line, the midpoint is pulled down 8 cm. Find the tension in each half of the clothesline.

38. The tension $\mathbf{T}$ at each end of the chain has magnitude 25 N (see the figure). What is the weight of the chain?



39. A boatman wants to cross a canal that is 3 km wide and wants to land at a point 2 km upstream from his starting point. The current in the canal flows at 3.5 km/h and the speed of his boat is 13 km/h.

(a) In what direction should he steer?

(b) How long will the trip take?

40. Three forces act on an object. Two of the forces are at an angle of 100° to each other and have magnitudes 25 N and 12 N. The third is perpendicular to the plane of these two forces and has magnitude 4 N. Calculate the magnitude of the force that would exactly counterbalance these three forces.

41. Find the unit vectors that are parallel to the tangent line to the parabola $y = x^2$ at the point $(2, 4)$.

42. (a) Find the unit vectors that are parallel to the tangent line to the curve $y = 2 \sin x$ at the point $(\pi/6, 1)$.
(b) Find the unit vectors that are perpendicular to the tangent line.
(c) Sketch the curve $y = 2 \sin x$ and the vectors in parts (a) and (b), all starting at $(\pi/6, 1)$.

43. If A, B, and C are the vertices of a triangle, find $\overrightarrow{AB} + \overrightarrow{BC} + \overrightarrow{CA}$.

44. Let C be the point on the line segment AB that is twice as far from B as it is from A. If $\mathbf{a} = \overrightarrow{OA}$, $\mathbf{b} = \overrightarrow{OB}$, and $\mathbf{c} = \overrightarrow{OC}$, show that $\mathbf{c} = \frac{2}{3}\mathbf{a} + \frac{1}{3}\mathbf{b}$.

45. (a) Draw the vectors $\mathbf{a} = \langle 3, 2 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 2, -1 \rangle$, and $\mathbf{c} = \langle 7, 1 \rangle$.
(b) Show, by means of a sketch, that there are scalars s and t such that $\mathbf{c} = s\mathbf{a} + t\mathbf{b}$.
(c) Use the sketch to estimate the values of s and t.
(d) Find the exact values of s and t.

46. Suppose that $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ are nonzero vectors that are not parallel and $\mathbf{c}$ is any vector in the plane determined by $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$. Give a geometric argument to show that $\mathbf{c}$ can be written as $\mathbf{c} = s\mathbf{a} + t\mathbf{b}$ for suitable scalars s and t. Then give an argument using components.

47. If $\mathbf{r} = \langle x, y, z \rangle$ and $\mathbf{r}_0 = \langle x_0, y_0, z_0 \rangle$, describe the set of all points (x, y, z) such that $|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0| = 1$.

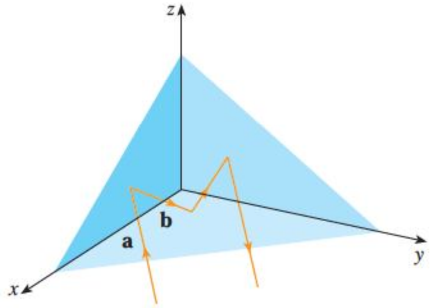
48. If $\mathbf{r} = \langle x, y \rangle$, $\mathbf{r}_1 = \langle x_1, y_1 \rangle$, and $\mathbf{r}_2 = \langle x_2, y_2 \rangle$, describe the set of all points (x, y) such that $|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_1| + |\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_2| = k$, where $k > |\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2|$.

49. Figure 16 gives a geometric demonstration of Property 2 of vectors. Use components to give an algebraic proof of this fact for the case $n = 2$.

50. Prove Property 5 of vectors algebraically for the case $n = 3$. Then use similar triangles to give a geometric proof.

51. Use vectors to prove that the line joining the midpoints of two sides of a triangle is parallel to the third side and half its length.

52. Suppose the three coordinate planes are all mirrored and a light ray given by the vector $\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2, a_3 \rangle$ first strikes the xz-plane, as shown in the figure. Use the fact that the angle of incidence equals the angle of reflection to show that the direction of the reflected ray is given by $\mathbf{b} = \langle a_1, -a_2, a_3 \rangle$. Deduce that, after being reflected by all three mutually perpendicular mirrors, the resulting ray is parallel to the initial ray. (American space scientists used this principle, together with laser beams and an array of corner mirrors on the moon, to calculate very precisely the distance from the earth to the moon.)



12.3 The Dot Product

So far we have added two vectors and multiplied a vector by a scalar. The question arises: Is it possible to multiply two vectors so that their product is a useful quantity? One such product is the dot product, whose definition follows. Another is the cross product, which is discussed in the next section.

> **1 Definition** If $\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2, a_3 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{b} = \langle b_1, b_2, b_3 \rangle$, then the **dot product** of $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ is the number $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}$ given by
>
> $$\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = a_1 b_1 + a_2 b_2 + a_3 b_3$$

Thus, to find the dot product of $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$, we multiply corresponding components and add. The result is not a vector. It is a real number, that is, a scalar. For this reason, the dot product is sometimes called the **scalar product** (or **inner product**). Although Definition 1 is given for three-dimensional vectors, the dot product of two-dimensional vectors is defined in a similar fashion:

$$\langle a_1, a_2 \rangle \cdot \langle b_1, b_2 \rangle = a_1 b_1 + a_2 b_2$$

V EXAMPLE 1

$$\langle 2, 4\rangle \cdot \langle 3, -1\rangle = 2(3) + 4(-1) = 2$$

$$\langle -1, 7, 4\rangle \cdot \left\langle 6, 2, -\tfrac{1}{2}\right\rangle = (-1)(6) + 7(2) + 4\left(-\tfrac{1}{2}\right) = 6$$

$$(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}) \cdot (2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}) = 1(0) + 2(2) + (-3)(-1) = 7$$

The dot product obeys many of the laws that hold for ordinary products of real numbers. These are stated in the following theorem.

2 Properties of the Dot Product If **a**, **b**, and **c** are vectors in V_3 and c is a scalar, then

1. $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{a} = |\mathbf{a}|^2$
2. $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{a}$
3. $\mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}) = \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c}$
4. $(c\mathbf{a}) \cdot \mathbf{b} = c(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}) = \mathbf{a} \cdot (c\mathbf{b})$
5. $\mathbf{0} \cdot \mathbf{a} = 0$

These properties are easily proved using Definition 1. For instance, here are the proofs of Properties 1 and 3:

1. $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{a} = a_1^2 + a_2^2 + a_3^2 = |\mathbf{a}|^2$

3. $$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}) &= \langle a_1, a_2, a_3\rangle \cdot \langle b_1 + c_1, b_2 + c_2, b_3 + c_3\rangle \\ &= a_1(b_1 + c_1) + a_2(b_2 + c_2) + a_3(b_3 + c_3) \\ &= a_1 b_1 + a_1 c_1 + a_2 b_2 + a_2 c_2 + a_3 b_3 + a_3 c_3 \\ &= (a_1 b_1 + a_2 b_2 + a_3 b_3) + (a_1 c_1 + a_2 c_2 + a_3 c_3) \\ &= \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c} \end{aligned}$$

The proofs of the remaining properties are left as exercises.

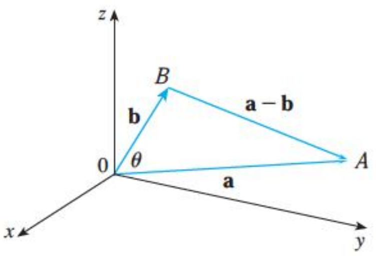


FIGURE 1

The dot product $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}$ can be given a geometric interpretation in terms of the **angle** θ **between a and b**, which is defined to be the angle between the representations of **a** and **b** that start at the origin, where $0 \leqslant \theta \leqslant \pi$. In other words, θ is the angle between the line segments $\overrightarrow{OA}$ and $\overrightarrow{OB}$ in Figure 1. Note that if **a** and **b** are parallel vectors, then $\theta = 0$ or $\theta = \pi$.

The formula in the following theorem is used by physicists as the *definition* of the dot product.

3 Theorem If θ is the angle between the vectors **a** and **b**, then

$$\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}| \cos \theta$$

PROOF If we apply the Law of Cosines to triangle OAB in Figure 1, we get

$$|AB|^2 = |OA|^2 + |OB|^2 - 2|OA||OB| \cos \theta \qquad (4)$$

(Observe that the Law of Cosines still applies in the limiting cases when $\theta = 0$ or π, or $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{0}$ or $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{0}$.) But $|OA| = |\mathbf{a}|$, $|OB| = |\mathbf{b}|$, and $|AB| = |\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}|$, so Equation 4 becomes

$$|\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}|^2 = |\mathbf{a}|^2 + |\mathbf{b}|^2 - 2|\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}| \cos \theta \qquad (5)$$

Using Properties 1, 2, and 3 of the dot product, we can rewrite the left side of this equation as follows:

$$|\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}|^2 = (\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}) \cdot (\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b})$$
$$= \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{a} - \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} - \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{b}$$
$$= |\mathbf{a}|^2 - 2\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} + |\mathbf{b}|^2$$

Therefore Equation 5 gives

$$|\mathbf{a}|^2 - 2\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} + |\mathbf{b}|^2 = |\mathbf{a}|^2 + |\mathbf{b}|^2 - 2|\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}| \cos \theta$$

Thus $$-2\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = -2|\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}| \cos \theta$$

or $$\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}| \cos \theta$$

EXAMPLE 2 If the vectors **a** and **b** have lengths 4 and 6, and the angle between them is $\pi/3$, find $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}$.

SOLUTION Using Theorem 3, we have

$$\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}| \cos(\pi/3) = 4 \cdot 6 \cdot \tfrac{1}{2} = 12$$

The formula in Theorem 3 also enables us to find the angle between two vectors.

6 Corollary If θ is the angle between the nonzero vectors **a** and **b**, then

$$\cos \theta = \frac{\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}}{|\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}|}$$

V **EXAMPLE 3** Find the angle between the vectors $\mathbf{a} = \langle 2, 2, -1 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{b} = \langle 5, -3, 2 \rangle$.

SOLUTION Since

$$|\mathbf{a}| = \sqrt{2^2 + 2^2 + (-1)^2} = 3 \qquad \text{and} \qquad |\mathbf{b}| = \sqrt{5^2 + (-3)^2 + 2^2} = \sqrt{38}$$

and since

$$\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = 2(5) + 2(-3) + (-1)(2) = 2$$

we have, from Corollary 6,

$$\cos \theta = \frac{\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}}{|\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}|} = \frac{2}{3\sqrt{38}}$$

So the angle between **a** and **b** is

$$\theta = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{2}{3\sqrt{38}}\right) \approx 1.46 \quad (\text{or } 84^\circ)$$

Two nonzero vectors **a** and **b** are called **perpendicular** or **orthogonal** if the angle between them is $\theta = \pi/2$. Then Theorem 3 gives

$$\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}| \cos(\pi/2) = 0$$

and conversely if $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = 0$, then $\cos\theta = 0$, so $\theta = \pi/2$. The zero vector $\mathbf{0}$ is considered to be perpendicular to all vectors. Therefore we have the following method for determining whether two vectors are orthogonal.

7 Two vectors $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ are orthogonal if and only if $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = 0$.

EXAMPLE 4 Show that $2\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$ is perpendicular to $5\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$.

SOLUTION Since

$$(2\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}) \cdot (5\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}) = 2(5) + 2(-4) + (-1)(2) = 0$$

these vectors are perpendicular by 7.

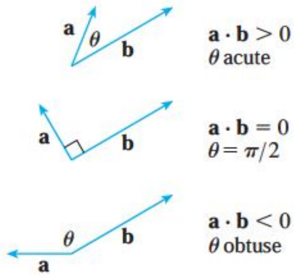


FIGURE 2

TEC Visual 12.3A shows an animation of Figure 2.

Because $\cos\theta > 0$ if $0 \leqslant \theta < \pi/2$ and $\cos\theta < 0$ if $\pi/2 < \theta \leqslant \pi$, we see that $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}$ is positive for $\theta < \pi/2$ and negative for $\theta > \pi/2$. We can think of $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}$ as measuring the extent to which $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ point in the same direction. The dot product $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}$ is positive if $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ point in the same general direction, 0 if they are perpendicular, and negative if they point in generally opposite directions (see Figure 2). In the extreme case where $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ point in exactly the same direction, we have $\theta = 0$, so $\cos\theta = 1$ and

$$\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = |\mathbf{a}|\,|\mathbf{b}|$$

If $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ point in exactly opposite directions, then $\theta = \pi$ and so $\cos\theta = -1$ and $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = -|\mathbf{a}|\,|\mathbf{b}|$.

Direction Angles and Direction Cosines

The **direction angles** of a nonzero vector $\mathbf{a}$ are the angles α, β, and γ (in the interval $[0, \pi]$) that $\mathbf{a}$ makes with the positive x-, y-, and z-axes. (See Figure 3.)

The cosines of these direction angles, $\cos\alpha$, $\cos\beta$, and $\cos\gamma$, are called the **direction cosines** of the vector $\mathbf{a}$. Using Corollary 6 with $\mathbf{b}$ replaced by $\mathbf{i}$, we obtain

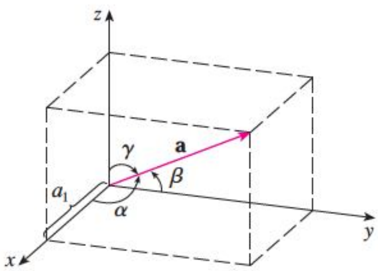


FIGURE 3

8 $$\cos\alpha = \frac{\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{i}}{|\mathbf{a}|\,|\mathbf{i}|} = \frac{a_1}{|\mathbf{a}|}$$

(This can also be seen directly from Figure 3.)

Similarly, we also have

9 $$\cos\beta = \frac{a_2}{|\mathbf{a}|} \qquad \cos\gamma = \frac{a_3}{|\mathbf{a}|}$$

By squaring the expressions in Equations 8 and 9 and adding, we see that

10 $$\cos^2\alpha + \cos^2\beta + \cos^2\gamma = 1$$

We can also use Equations 8 and 9 to write

$$\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2, a_3 \rangle = \langle |\mathbf{a}|\cos\alpha, |\mathbf{a}|\cos\beta, |\mathbf{a}|\cos\gamma \rangle$$
$$= |\mathbf{a}|\langle \cos\alpha, \cos\beta, \cos\gamma \rangle$$

Therefore

11
$$\frac{1}{|\mathbf{a}|}\mathbf{a} = \langle \cos\alpha, \cos\beta, \cos\gamma \rangle$$

which says that the direction cosines of **a** are the components of the unit vector in the direction of **a**.

EXAMPLE 5 Find the direction angles of the vector $\mathbf{a} = \langle 1, 2, 3 \rangle$.

SOLUTION Since $|\mathbf{a}| = \sqrt{1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2} = \sqrt{14}$, Equations 8 and 9 give

$$\cos\alpha = \frac{1}{\sqrt{14}} \qquad \cos\beta = \frac{2}{\sqrt{14}} \qquad \cos\gamma = \frac{3}{\sqrt{14}}$$

and so

$$\alpha = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{14}}\right) \approx 74° \qquad \beta = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{2}{\sqrt{14}}\right) \approx 58° \qquad \gamma = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{3}{\sqrt{14}}\right) \approx 37°$$

Projections

TEC Visual 12.3B shows how Figure 4 changes when we vary **a** and **b**.

Figure 4 shows representations $\overrightarrow{PQ}$ and $\overrightarrow{PR}$ of two vectors **a** and **b** with the same initial point P. If S is the foot of the perpendicular from R to the line containing $\overrightarrow{PQ}$, then the vector with representation $\overrightarrow{PS}$ is called the **vector projection** of **b** onto **a** and is denoted by $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{a}}\,\mathbf{b}$. (You can think of it as a shadow of **b**).

The **scalar projection** of **b** onto **a** (also called the **component of b along a**) is defined to be the signed magnitude of the vector projection, which is the number $|\mathbf{b}|\cos\theta$, where θ is the angle between **a** and **b**. (See Figure 5.) This is denoted by $\text{comp}_{\mathbf{a}}\,\mathbf{b}$. Observe that it is negative if $\pi/2 < \theta \leqslant \pi$. The equation

$$\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b} = |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}|\cos\theta = |\mathbf{a}|\big(|\mathbf{b}|\cos\theta\big)$$

shows that the dot product of **a** and **b** can be interpreted as the length of **a** times the scalar projection of **b** onto **a**. Since

$$|\mathbf{b}|\cos\theta = \frac{\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}}{|\mathbf{a}|} = \frac{\mathbf{a}}{|\mathbf{a}|}\cdot\mathbf{b}$$

the component of **b** along **a** can be computed by taking the dot product of **b** with the unit vector in the direction of **a**. We summarize these ideas as follows.

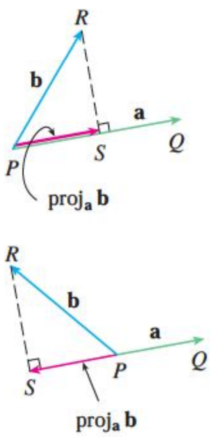


FIGURE 4
Vector projections

Scalar projection of **b** onto **a**:	$\text{comp}_{\mathbf{a}}\,\mathbf{b} = \dfrac{\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}}{|\mathbf{a}|}$
Vector projection of **b** onto **a**:	$\text{proj}_{\mathbf{a}}\,\mathbf{b} = \left(\dfrac{\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}}{|\mathbf{a}|}\right)\dfrac{\mathbf{a}}{|\mathbf{a}|} = \dfrac{\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}}{|\mathbf{a}|^2}\,\mathbf{a}$

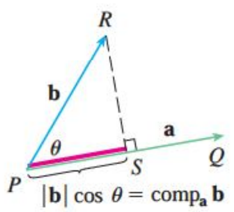


FIGURE 5
Scalar projection

Notice that the vector projection is the scalar projection times the unit vector in the direction of **a**.

V EXAMPLE 6 Find the scalar projection and vector projection of $\mathbf{b} = \langle 1, 1, 2 \rangle$ onto $\mathbf{a} = \langle -2, 3, 1 \rangle$.

SOLUTION Since $|\mathbf{a}| = \sqrt{(-2)^2 + 3^2 + 1^2} = \sqrt{14}$, the scalar projection of $\mathbf{b}$ onto $\mathbf{a}$ is

$$\text{comp}_{\mathbf{a}} \mathbf{b} = \frac{\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}}{|\mathbf{a}|} = \frac{(-2)(1) + 3(1) + 1(2)}{\sqrt{14}} = \frac{3}{\sqrt{14}}$$

The vector projection is this scalar projection times the unit vector in the direction of $\mathbf{a}$:

$$\text{proj}_{\mathbf{a}} \mathbf{b} = \frac{3}{\sqrt{14}} \frac{\mathbf{a}}{|\mathbf{a}|} = \frac{3}{14}\mathbf{a} = \left\langle -\frac{3}{7}, \frac{9}{14}, \frac{3}{14} \right\rangle$$

One use of projections occurs in physics in calculating work. In Section 6.4 we defined the work done by a constant force F in moving an object through a distance d as $W = Fd$, but this applies only when the force is directed along the line of motion of the object. Suppose, however, that the constant force is a vector $\mathbf{F} = \overrightarrow{PR}$ pointing in some other direction, as in Figure 6. If the force moves the object from P to Q, then the **displacement vector** is $\mathbf{D} = \overrightarrow{PQ}$. The **work** done by this force is defined to be the product of the component of the force along $\mathbf{D}$ and the distance moved:

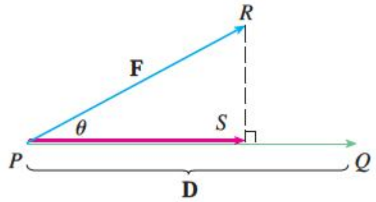


FIGURE 6

$$W = (|\mathbf{F}| \cos \theta) |\mathbf{D}|$$

But then, from Theorem 3, we have

12 $$W = |\mathbf{F}||\mathbf{D}| \cos \theta = \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{D}$$

Thus the work done by a constant force $\mathbf{F}$ is the dot product $\mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{D}$, where $\mathbf{D}$ is the displacement vector.

EXAMPLE 7 A wagon is pulled a distance of 100 m along a horizontal path by a constant force of 70 N. The handle of the wagon is held at an angle of 35° above the horizontal. Find the work done by the force.

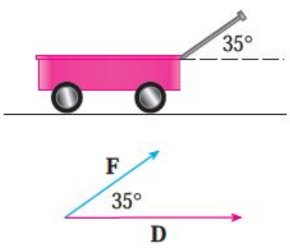


FIGURE 7

SOLUTION If $\mathbf{F}$ and $\mathbf{D}$ are the force and displacement vectors, as pictured in Figure 7, then the work done is

$$W = \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{D} = |\mathbf{F}||\mathbf{D}| \cos 35^\circ$$
$$= (70)(100) \cos 35^\circ \approx 5734 \text{ N·m} = 5734 \text{ J}$$

EXAMPLE 8 A force is given by a vector $\mathbf{F} = 3\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} + 5\mathbf{k}$ and moves a particle from the point $P(2, 1, 0)$ to the point $Q(4, 6, 2)$. Find the work done.

SOLUTION The displacement vector is $\mathbf{D} = \overrightarrow{PQ} = \langle 2, 5, 2 \rangle$, so by Equation 12, the work done is

$$W = \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{D} = \langle 3, 4, 5 \rangle \cdot \langle 2, 5, 2 \rangle$$
$$= 6 + 20 + 10 = 36$$

If the unit of length is meters and the magnitude of the force is measured in newtons, then the work done is 36 J.

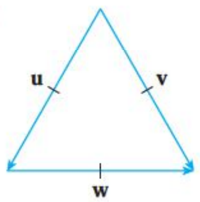
12.3 Exercises

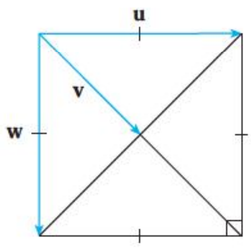
1. Which of the following expressions are meaningful? Which are meaningless? Explain.
   (a) $(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{c}$ (b) $(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b})\mathbf{c}$
   (c) $|\mathbf{a}|(\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{c})$ (d) $\mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c})$
   (e) $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}$ (f) $|\mathbf{a}| \cdot (\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c})$

2–10 Find $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}$.

2. $\mathbf{a} = \langle -2, 3 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 0.7, 1.2 \rangle$
3. $\mathbf{a} = \langle -2, \frac{1}{3} \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle -5, 12 \rangle$
4. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 6, -2, 3 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 2, 5, -1 \rangle$
5. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 4, 1, \frac{1}{4} \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 6, -3, -8 \rangle$
6. $\mathbf{a} = \langle p, -p, 2p \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 2q, q, -q \rangle$
7. $\mathbf{a} = 2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$
8. $\mathbf{a} = 3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = 4\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{k}$
9. $|\mathbf{a}| = 6$, $|\mathbf{b}| = 5$, the angle between $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ is $2\pi/3$
10. $|\mathbf{a}| = 3$, $|\mathbf{b}| = \sqrt{6}$, the angle between $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ is $45°$

11–12 If $\mathbf{u}$ is a unit vector, find $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{w}$.

11.


12.


13. (a) Show that $\mathbf{i} \cdot \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{j} \cdot \mathbf{k} = \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{i} = 0$.
    (b) Show that $\mathbf{i} \cdot \mathbf{i} = \mathbf{j} \cdot \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{k} = 1$.

14. A street vendor sells a hamburgers, b hot dogs, and c soft drinks on a given day. He charges \$2 for a hamburger, \$1.50 for a hot dog, and \$1 for a soft drink. If $\mathbf{A} = \langle a, b, c \rangle$ and $\mathbf{P} = \langle 2, 1.5, 1 \rangle$, what is the meaning of the dot product $\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{P}$?

15–20 Find the angle between the vectors. (First find an exact expression and then approximate to the nearest degree.)

15. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 4, 3 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 2, -1 \rangle$
16. $\mathbf{a} = \langle -2, 5 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 5, 12 \rangle$
17. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 3, -1, 5 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle -2, 4, 3 \rangle$
18. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 4, 0, 2 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 2, -1, 0 \rangle$
19. $\mathbf{a} = 4\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = 2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{k}$
20. $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = 4\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{k}$

21–22 Find, correct to the nearest degree, the three angles of the triangle with the given vertices.

21. $P(2, 0)$, $Q(0, 3)$, $R(3, 4)$
22. $A(1, 0, -1)$, $B(3, -2, 0)$, $C(1, 3, 3)$

23–24 Determine whether the given vectors are orthogonal, parallel, or neither.

23. (a) $\mathbf{a} = \langle -5, 3, 7 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 6, -8, 2 \rangle$
    (b) $\mathbf{a} = \langle 4, 6 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle -3, 2 \rangle$
    (c) $\mathbf{a} = -\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + 5\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = 3\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$
    (d) $\mathbf{a} = 2\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{j} - 4\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = -3\mathbf{i} - 9\mathbf{j} + 6\mathbf{k}$
24. (a) $\mathbf{u} = \langle -3, 9, 6 \rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle 4, -12, -8 \rangle$
    (b) $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{v} = 2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$
    (c) $\mathbf{u} = \langle a, b, c \rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle -b, a, 0 \rangle$

25. Use vectors to decide whether the triangle with vertices $P(1, -3, -2)$, $Q(2, 0, -4)$, and $R(6, -2, -5)$ is right-angled.
26. Find the values of x such that the angle between the vectors $\langle 2, 1, -1 \rangle$, and $\langle 1, x, 0 \rangle$ is $45°$.
27. Find a unit vector that is orthogonal to both $\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{k}$.
28. Find two unit vectors that make an angle of $60°$ with $\mathbf{v} = \langle 3, 4 \rangle$.

29–30 Find the acute angle between the lines.

29. $2x - y = 3$, $3x + y = 7$
30. $x + 2y = 7$, $5x - y = 2$

31–32 Find the acute angles between the curves at their points of intersection. (The angle between two curves is the angle between their tangent lines at the point of intersection.)

31. $y = x^2$, $y = x^3$
32. $y = \sin x$, $y = \cos x$, $0 \leqslant x \leqslant \pi/2$

33–37 Find the direction cosines and direction angles of the vector. (Give the direction angles correct to the nearest degree.)

33. $\langle 2, 1, 2 \rangle$
34. $\langle 6, 3, -2 \rangle$
35. $\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}$
36. $\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$
37. $\langle c, c, c \rangle$, where $c > 0$

38. If a vector has direction angles $\alpha = \pi/4$ and $\beta = \pi/3$, find the third direction angle γ.

1. Homework Hints available at stewartcalculus.com

39–44 Find the scalar and vector projections of **b** onto **a**.

39. $\mathbf{a} = \langle -5, 12 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 4, 6 \rangle$

40. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 1, 4 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 2, 3 \rangle$

41. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 3, 6, -2 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 1, 2, 3 \rangle$

42. $\mathbf{a} = \langle -2, 3, -6 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 5, -1, 4 \rangle$

43. $\mathbf{a} = 2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{j} + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{k}$

44. $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$

---

45. Show that the vector $\text{orth}_{\mathbf{a}}\,\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{b} - \text{proj}_{\mathbf{a}}\,\mathbf{b}$ is orthogonal to **a**. (It is called an **orthogonal projection** of **b**.)

46. For the vectors in Exercise 40, find $\text{orth}_{\mathbf{a}}\,\mathbf{b}$ and illustrate by drawing the vectors **a**, **b**, $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{a}}\,\mathbf{b}$, and $\text{orth}_{\mathbf{a}}\,\mathbf{b}$.

47. If $\mathbf{a} = \langle 3, 0, -1 \rangle$, find a vector **b** such that $\text{comp}_{\mathbf{a}}\,\mathbf{b} = 2$.

48. Suppose that **a** and **b** are nonzero vectors.
(a) Under what circumstances is $\text{comp}_{\mathbf{a}}\,\mathbf{b} = \text{comp}_{\mathbf{b}}\,\mathbf{a}$?
(b) Under what circumstances is $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{a}}\,\mathbf{b} = \text{proj}_{\mathbf{b}}\,\mathbf{a}$?

49. Find the work done by a force $\mathbf{F} = 8\mathbf{i} - 6\mathbf{j} + 9\mathbf{k}$ that moves an object from the point $(0, 10, 8)$ to the point $(6, 12, 20)$ along a straight line. The distance is measured in meters and the force in newtons.

50. A tow truck drags a stalled car along a road. The chain makes an angle of $30°$ with the road and the tension in the chain is 1500 N. How much work is done by the truck in pulling the car 1 km?

51. A sled is pulled along a level path through snow by a rope. A 30-lb force acting at an angle of $40°$ above the horizontal moves the sled 80 ft. Find the work done by the force.

52. A boat sails south with the help of a wind blowing in the direction S36°E with magnitude 400 lb. Find the work done by the wind as the boat moves 120 ft.

53. Use a scalar projection to show that the distance from a point $P_1(x_1, y_1)$ to the line $ax + by + c = 0$ is

$$\frac{|ax_1 + by_1 + c|}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}$$

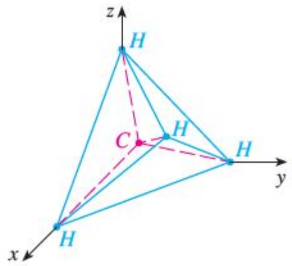
Use this formula to find the distance from the point $(-2, 3)$ to the line $3x - 4y + 5 = 0$.

54. If $\mathbf{r} = \langle x, y, z \rangle$, $\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2, a_3 \rangle$, and $\mathbf{b} = \langle b_1, b_2, b_3 \rangle$, show that the vector equation $(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{a}) \cdot (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{b}) = 0$ represents a sphere, and find its center and radius.

55. Find the angle between a diagonal of a cube and one of its edges.

56. Find the angle between a diagonal of a cube and a diagonal of one of its faces.

57. A molecule of methane, CH_4, is structured with the four hydrogen atoms at the vertices of a regular tetrahedron and the carbon atom at the centroid. The *bond angle* is the angle formed by the H—C—H combination; it is the angle between the lines that join the carbon atom to two of the hydrogen atoms. Show that the bond angle is about $109.5°$. [*Hint:* Take the vertices of the tetrahedron to be the points $(1, 0, 0)$, $(0, 1, 0)$, $(0, 0, 1)$, and $(1, 1, 1)$, as shown in the figure. Then the centroid is $\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$.]



58. If $\mathbf{c} = |\mathbf{a}|\mathbf{b} + |\mathbf{b}|\mathbf{a}$, where **a**, **b**, and **c** are all nonzero vectors, show that **c** bisects the angle between **a** and **b**.

59. Prove Properties 2, 4, and 5 of the dot product (Theorem 2).

60. Suppose that all sides of a quadrilateral are equal in length and opposite sides are parallel. Use vector methods to show that the diagonals are perpendicular.

61. Use Theorem 3 to prove the Cauchy-Schwarz Inequality:

$$|\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}| \leqslant |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}|$$

62. The Triangle Inequality for vectors is

$$|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}| \leqslant |\mathbf{a}| + |\mathbf{b}|$$

(a) Give a geometric interpretation of the Triangle Inequality.
(b) Use the Cauchy-Schwarz Inequality from Exercise 61 to prove the Triangle Inequality. [*Hint:* Use the fact that $|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}|^2 = (\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) \cdot (\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b})$ and use Property 3 of the dot product.]

63. The Parallelogram Law states that

$$|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}|^2 + |\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}|^2 = 2|\mathbf{a}|^2 + 2|\mathbf{b}|^2$$

(a) Give a geometric interpretation of the Parallelogram Law.
(b) Prove the Parallelogram Law. (See the hint in Exercise 62.)

64. Show that if $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$ are orthogonal, then the vectors **u** and **v** must have the same length.

12.4 The Cross Product

Given two nonzero vectors $\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2, a_3 \rangle$ and $b = \langle b_1, b_2, b_3 \rangle$, it is very useful to be able to find a nonzero vector $\mathbf{c}$ that is perpendicular to both $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$, as we will see in the next section and in Chapters 13 and 14. If $\mathbf{c} = \langle c_1, c_2, c_3 \rangle$ is such a vector, then $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c} = 0$ and $\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{c} = 0$ and so

1 $$a_1c_1 + a_2c_2 + a_3c_3 = 0$$

2 $$b_1c_1 + b_2c_2 + b_3c_3 = 0$$

To eliminate c_3 we multiply **1** by b_3 and **2** by a_3 and subtract:

3 $$(a_1b_3 - a_3b_1)c_1 + (a_2b_3 - a_3b_2)c_2 = 0$$

Equation 3 has the form $pc_1 + qc_2 = 0$, for which an obvious solution is $c_1 = q$ and $c_2 = -p$. So a solution of **3** is

$$c_1 = a_2b_3 - a_3b_2 \qquad c_2 = a_3b_1 - a_1b_3$$

Substituting these values into **1** and **2**, we then get

$$c_3 = a_1b_2 - a_2b_1$$

This means that a vector perpendicular to both $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ is

$$\langle c_1, c_2, c_3 \rangle = \langle a_2b_3 - a_3b_2, a_3b_1 - a_1b_3, a_1b_2 - a_2b_1 \rangle$$

The resulting vector is called the *cross product* of $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ and is denoted by $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$.

Hamilton

The cross product was invented by the Irish mathematician Sir William Rowan Hamilton (1805–1865), who had created a precursor of vectors, called quaternions. When he was five years old Hamilton could read Latin, Greek, and Hebrew. At age eight he added French and Italian and when ten he could read Arabic and Sanskrit. At the age of 21, while still an undergraduate at Trinity College in Dublin, Hamilton was appointed Professor of Astronomy at the university and Royal Astronomer of Ireland!

4 Definition If $\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2, a_3 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{b} = \langle b_1, b_2, b_3 \rangle$, then the **cross product** of $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ is the vector

$$\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = \langle a_2b_3 - a_3b_2, a_3b_1 - a_1b_3, a_1b_2 - a_2b_1 \rangle$$

Notice that the **cross product** $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$ of two vectors $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$, unlike the dot product, is a vector. For this reason it is also called the **vector product**. Note that $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$ is defined only when $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ are *three-dimensional* vectors.

In order to make Definition 4 easier to remember, we use the notation of determinants. A **determinant of order 2** is defined by

$$\begin{vmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{vmatrix} = ad - bc$$

For example,
$$\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ -6 & 4 \end{vmatrix} = 2(4) - 1(-6) = 14$$

A **determinant of order 3** can be defined in terms of second-order determinants as follows:

5 $$\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \\ c_1 & c_2 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} = a_1 \begin{vmatrix} b_2 & b_3 \\ c_2 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} - a_2 \begin{vmatrix} b_1 & b_3 \\ c_1 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} + a_3 \begin{vmatrix} b_1 & b_2 \\ c_1 & c_2 \end{vmatrix}$$

Observe that each term on the right side of Equation 5 involves a number a_i in the first row of the determinant, and a_i is multiplied by the second-order determinant obtained from the left side by deleting the row and column in which a_i appears. Notice also the minus sign in the second term. For example,

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 0 & 1 \\ -5 & 4 & 2 \end{vmatrix} = 1\begin{vmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 4 & 2 \end{vmatrix} - 2\begin{vmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ -5 & 2 \end{vmatrix} + (-1)\begin{vmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ -5 & 4 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= 1(0 - 4) - 2(6 + 5) + (-1)(12 - 0) = -38$$

If we now rewrite Definition 4 using second-order determinants and the standard basis vectors **i**, **j**, and **k**, we see that the cross product of the vectors $\mathbf{a} = a_1\,\mathbf{i} + a_2\,\mathbf{j} + a_3\,\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{b} = b_1\,\mathbf{i} + b_2\,\mathbf{j} + b_3\,\mathbf{k}$ is

6 $$\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = \begin{vmatrix} a_2 & a_3 \\ b_2 & b_3 \end{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} - \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_3 \end{vmatrix} \mathbf{j} + \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \\ b_1 & b_2 \end{vmatrix} \mathbf{k}$$

In view of the similarity between Equations 5 and 6, we often write

7 $$\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \end{vmatrix}$$

Although the first row of the symbolic determinant in Equation 7 consists of vectors, if we expand it as if it were an ordinary determinant using the rule in Equation 5, we obtain Equation 6. The symbolic formula in Equation 7 is probably the easiest way of remembering and computing cross products.

V EXAMPLE 1 If $\mathbf{a} = \langle 1, 3, 4 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{b} = \langle 2, 7, -5 \rangle$, then

$$\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ 1 & 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 7 & -5 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ 7 & -5 \end{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} - \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ 2 & -5 \end{vmatrix} \mathbf{j} + \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 2 & 7 \end{vmatrix} \mathbf{k}$$

$$= (-15 - 28)\,\mathbf{i} - (-5 - 8)\,\mathbf{j} + (7 - 6)\,\mathbf{k} = -43\mathbf{i} + 13\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$$

V EXAMPLE 2 Show that $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{a} = \mathbf{0}$ for any vector **a** in V_3.

SOLUTION If $\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2, a_3 \rangle$, then

$$\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{a} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\ a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= (a_2 a_3 - a_3 a_2)\,\mathbf{i} - (a_1 a_3 - a_3 a_1)\,\mathbf{j} + (a_1 a_2 - a_2 a_1)\,\mathbf{k}$$

$$= 0\mathbf{i} - 0\mathbf{j} + 0\mathbf{k} = \mathbf{0}$$

We constructed the cross product $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$ so that it would be perpendicular to both $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$. This is one of the most important properties of a cross product, so let's emphasize and verify it in the following theorem and give a formal proof.

8 Theorem The vector $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$ is orthogonal to both $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$.

PROOF In order to show that $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$ is orthogonal to $\mathbf{a}$, we compute their dot product as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{a} &= \begin{vmatrix} a_2 & a_3 \\ b_2 & b_3 \end{vmatrix} a_1 - \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_3 \end{vmatrix} a_2 + \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \\ b_1 & b_2 \end{vmatrix} a_3 \\ &= a_1(a_2 b_3 - a_3 b_2) - a_2(a_1 b_3 - a_3 b_1) + a_3(a_1 b_2 - a_2 b_1) \\ &= a_1 a_2 b_3 - a_1 b_2 a_3 - a_1 a_2 b_3 + b_1 a_2 a_3 + a_1 b_2 a_3 - b_1 a_2 a_3 \\ &= 0\end{aligned}$$

A similar computation shows that $(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{b} = 0$. Therefore $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$ is orthogonal to both $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$. ∎

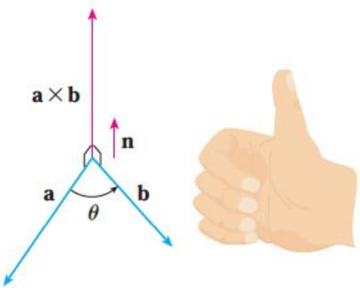


FIGURE 1
The right-hand rule gives the direction of $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$.

TEC Visual 12.4 shows how $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$ changes as $\mathbf{b}$ changes.

If $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ are represented by directed line segments with the same initial point (as in Figure 1), then Theorem 8 says that the cross product $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$ points in a direction perpendicular to the plane through $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$. It turns out that the direction of $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$ is given by the *right-hand rule:* If the fingers of your right hand curl in the direction of a rotation (through an angle less than 180°) from $\mathbf{a}$ to $\mathbf{b}$, then your thumb points in the direction of $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$.

Now that we know the direction of the vector $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$, the remaining thing we need to complete its geometric description is its length $|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}|$. This is given by the following theorem.

9 Theorem If θ is the angle between $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ (so $0 \leqslant \theta \leqslant \pi$), then

$$|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}| = |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}| \sin \theta$$

PROOF From the definitions of the cross product and length of a vector, we have

$$\begin{aligned}|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}|^2 &= (a_2 b_3 - a_3 b_2)^2 + (a_3 b_1 - a_1 b_3)^2 + (a_1 b_2 - a_2 b_1)^2 \\ &= a_2^2 b_3^2 - 2a_2 a_3 b_2 b_3 + a_3^2 b_2^2 + a_3^2 b_1^2 - 2a_1 a_3 b_1 b_3 + a_1^2 b_3^2 \\ &\qquad + a_1^2 b_2^2 - 2a_1 a_2 b_1 b_2 + a_2^2 b_1^2 \\ &= (a_1^2 + a_2^2 + a_3^2)(b_1^2 + b_2^2 + b_3^2) - (a_1 b_1 + a_2 b_2 + a_3 b_3)^2 \\ &= |\mathbf{a}|^2 |\mathbf{b}|^2 - (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b})^2 \\ &= |\mathbf{a}|^2 |\mathbf{b}|^2 - |\mathbf{a}|^2 |\mathbf{b}|^2 \cos^2\theta \qquad \text{(by Theorem 12.3.3)} \\ &= |\mathbf{a}|^2 |\mathbf{b}|^2 (1 - \cos^2\theta) \\ &= |\mathbf{a}|^2 |\mathbf{b}|^2 \sin^2\theta\end{aligned}$$

Taking square roots and observing that $\sqrt{\sin^2\theta} = \sin \theta$ because $\sin \theta \geqslant 0$ when $0 \leqslant \theta \leqslant \pi$, we have

$$|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}| = |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}| \sin \theta$$ ∎

Geometric characterization of $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$

Since a vector is completely determined by its magnitude and direction, we can now say that $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$ is the vector that is perpendicular to both $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$, whose orientation is determined by the right-hand rule, and whose length is $|\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}|\sin\theta$. In fact, that is exactly how physicists *define* $\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b}$.

> **10 Corollary** Two nonzero vectors **a** and **b** are parallel if and only if
>
> $$\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b}=\mathbf{0}$$

PROOF Two nonzero vectors **a** and **b** are parallel if and only if $\theta=0$ or π. In either case $\sin\theta=0$, so $|\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b}|=0$ and therefore $\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b}=\mathbf{0}$.

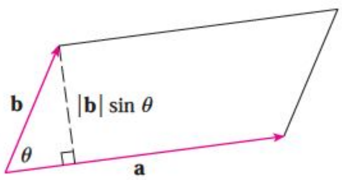


FIGURE 2

The geometric interpretation of Theorem 9 can be seen by looking at Figure 2. If **a** and **b** are represented by directed line segments with the same initial point, then they determine a parallelogram with base $|\mathbf{a}|$, altitude $|\mathbf{b}|\sin\theta$, and area

$$A=|\mathbf{a}|\big(|\mathbf{b}|\sin\theta\big)=|\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b}|$$

Thus we have the following way of interpreting the magnitude of a cross product.

> The length of the cross product $\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b}$ is equal to the area of the parallelogram determined by **a** and **b**.

EXAMPLE 3 Find a vector perpendicular to the plane that passes through the points $P(1, 4, 6)$, $Q(-2, 5, -1)$, and $R(1, -1, 1)$.

SOLUTION The vector $\overrightarrow{PQ}\times\overrightarrow{PR}$ is perpendicular to both $\overrightarrow{PQ}$ and $\overrightarrow{PR}$ and is therefore perpendicular to the plane through P, Q, and R. We know from (12.2.1) that

$$\overrightarrow{PQ}=(-2-1)\,\mathbf{i}+(5-4)\,\mathbf{j}+(-1-6)\,\mathbf{k}=-3\mathbf{i}+\mathbf{j}-7\mathbf{k}$$

$$\overrightarrow{PR}=(1-1)\,\mathbf{i}+(-1-4)\,\mathbf{j}+(1-6)\,\mathbf{k}=-5\mathbf{j}-5\mathbf{k}$$

We compute the cross product of these vectors:

$$\overrightarrow{PQ}\times\overrightarrow{PR}=\begin{vmatrix}\mathbf{i}&\mathbf{j}&\mathbf{k}\\-3&1&-7\\0&-5&-5\end{vmatrix}$$

$$=(-5-35)\,\mathbf{i}-(15-0)\,\mathbf{j}+(15-0)\,\mathbf{k}=-40\,\mathbf{i}-15\mathbf{j}+15\mathbf{k}$$

So the vector $\langle -40, -15, 15\rangle$ is perpendicular to the given plane. Any nonzero scalar multiple of this vector, such as $\langle -8, -3, 3\rangle$, is also perpendicular to the plane.

EXAMPLE 4 Find the area of the triangle with vertices $P(1, 4, 6)$, $Q(-2, 5, -1)$, and $R(1, -1, 1)$.

SOLUTION In Example 3 we computed that $\overrightarrow{PQ}\times\overrightarrow{PR}=\langle -40, -15, 15\rangle$. The area of the parallelogram with adjacent sides PQ and PR is the length of this cross product:

$$|\overrightarrow{PQ}\times\overrightarrow{PR}|=\sqrt{(-40)^2+(-15)^2+15^2}=5\sqrt{82}$$

The area A of the triangle PQR is half the area of this parallelogram, that is, $\frac{5}{2}\sqrt{82}$.

If we apply Theorems 8 and 9 to the standard basis vectors **i**, **j**, and **k** using $\theta = \pi/2$, we obtain

$$\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{k} \qquad \mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{k} = \mathbf{i} \qquad \mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{i} = \mathbf{j}$$

$$\mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{i} = -\mathbf{k} \qquad \mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{j} = -\mathbf{i} \qquad \mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{k} = -\mathbf{j}$$

Observe that

$$\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{j} \neq \mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{i}$$

Thus the cross product is not commutative. Also

$$\mathbf{i} \times (\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{j}) = \mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{k} = -\mathbf{j}$$

whereas

$$(\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{i}) \times \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{0} \times \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{0}$$

So the associative law for multiplication does not usually hold; that is, in general,

$$(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \times \mathbf{c} \neq \mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c})$$

However, some of the usual laws of algebra *do* hold for cross products. The following theorem summarizes the properties of vector products.

11 Theorem If **a**, **b**, and **c** are vectors and c is a scalar, then

1. $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = -\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{a}$
2. $(c\mathbf{a}) \times \mathbf{b} = c(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) = \mathbf{a} \times (c\mathbf{b})$
3. $\mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}) = \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{c}$
4. $(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) \times \mathbf{c} = \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}$
5. $\mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) = (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{c}$
6. $\mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) = (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c})\mathbf{b} - (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b})\mathbf{c}$

These properties can be proved by writing the vectors in terms of their components and using the definition of a cross product. We give the proof of Property 5 and leave the remaining proofs as exercises.

PROOF OF PROPERTY 5 If $\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2, a_3 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle b_1, b_2, b_3 \rangle$, and $\mathbf{c} = \langle c_1, c_2, c_3 \rangle$, then

12
$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) &= a_1(b_2c_3 - b_3c_2) + a_2(b_3c_1 - b_1c_3) + a_3(b_1c_2 - b_2c_1) \\ &= a_1b_2c_3 - a_1b_3c_2 + a_2b_3c_1 - a_2b_1c_3 + a_3b_1c_2 - a_3b_2c_1 \\ &= (a_2b_3 - a_3b_2)c_1 + (a_3b_1 - a_1b_3)c_2 + (a_1b_2 - a_2b_1)c_3 \\ &= (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{c} \end{aligned}$$

Triple Products

The product $\mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c})$ that occurs in Property 5 is called the **scalar triple product** of the vectors **a**, **b**, and **c**. Notice from Equation 12 that we can write the scalar triple product as a determinant:

13
$$\mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) = \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \\ c_1 & c_2 & c_3 \end{vmatrix}$$

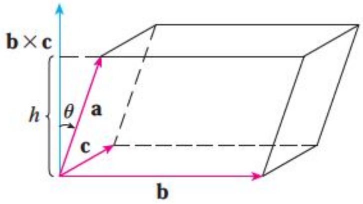


FIGURE 3

The geometric significance of the scalar triple product can be seen by considering the parallelepiped determined by the vectors **a**, **b**, and **c**. (See Figure 3.) The area of the base parallelogram is $A = |\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}|$. If θ is the angle between **a** and $\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}$, then the height h of the parallelepiped is $h = |\mathbf{a}||\cos\theta|$. (We must use $|\cos\theta|$ instead of $\cos\theta$ in case $\theta > \pi/2$.) Therefore the volume of the parallelepiped is

$$V = Ah = |\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}||\mathbf{a}||\cos\theta| = |\mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c})|$$

Thus we have proved the following formula.

14 The volume of the parallelepiped determined by the vectors **a**, **b**, and **c** is the magnitude of their scalar triple product:

$$V = |\mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c})|$$

If we use the formula in 14 and discover that the volume of the parallelepiped determined by **a**, **b**, and **c** is 0, then the vectors must lie in the same plane; that is, they are **coplanar**.

V EXAMPLE 5 Use the scalar triple product to show that the vectors $\mathbf{a} = \langle 1, 4, -7 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 2, -1, 4 \rangle$, and $\mathbf{c} = \langle 0, -9, 18 \rangle$ are coplanar.

SOLUTION We use Equation 13 to compute their scalar triple product:

$$\mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 4 & -7 \\ 2 & -1 & 4 \\ 0 & -9 & 18 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= 1\begin{vmatrix} -1 & 4 \\ -9 & 18 \end{vmatrix} - 4\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 0 & 18 \end{vmatrix} - 7\begin{vmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 0 & -9 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= 1(18) - 4(36) - 7(-18) = 0$$

Therefore, by 14, the volume of the parallelepiped determined by **a**, **b**, and **c** is 0. This means that **a**, **b**, and **c** are coplanar.

The product $\mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c})$ that occurs in Property 6 is called the **vector triple product** of **a**, **b**, and **c**. Property 6 will be used to derive Kepler's First Law of planetary motion in Chapter 13. Its proof is left as Exercise 50.

Torque

The idea of a cross product occurs often in physics. In particular, we consider a force **F** acting on a rigid body at a point given by a position vector **r**. (For instance, if we tighten a bolt by applying a force to a wrench as in Figure 4, we produce a turning effect.) The **torque** $\boldsymbol{\tau}$ (relative to the origin) is defined to be the cross product of the position and force vectors

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}$$

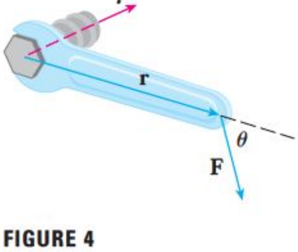


FIGURE 4

and measures the tendency of the body to rotate about the origin. The direction of the torque vector indicates the axis of rotation. According to Theorem 9, the magnitude of the torque vector is

$$|\boldsymbol{\tau}| = |\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}| = |\mathbf{r}||\mathbf{F}|\sin\theta$$

where θ is the angle between the position and force vectors. Observe that the only component of **F** that can cause a rotation is the one perpendicular to **r**, that is, $|\mathbf{F}|\sin\theta$. The magnitude of the torque is equal to the area of the parallelogram determined by **r** and **F**.

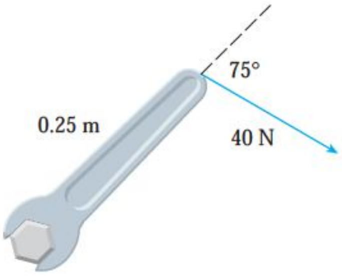


FIGURE 5

EXAMPLE 6 A bolt is tightened by applying a 40-N force to a 0.25-m wrench as shown in Figure 5. Find the magnitude of the torque about the center of the bolt.

SOLUTION The magnitude of the torque vector is

$$|\boldsymbol{\tau}| = |\mathbf{r}\times\mathbf{F}| = |\mathbf{r}||\mathbf{F}|\sin 75° = (0.25)(40)\sin 75°$$
$$= 10\sin 75° \approx 9.66 \text{ N·m}$$

If the bolt is right-threaded, then the torque vector itself is

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = |\boldsymbol{\tau}|\,\mathbf{n} \approx 9.66\,\mathbf{n}$$

where **n** is a unit vector directed down into the page.

12.4 Exercises

1–7 Find the cross product $\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b}$ and verify that it is orthogonal to both **a** and **b**.

1. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 6, 0, -2\rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 0, 8, 0\rangle$
2. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 1, 1, -1\rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 2, 4, 6\rangle$
3. $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = -\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{k}$
4. $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{j} + 7\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = 2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k}$
5. $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{k}$
6. $\mathbf{a} = t\mathbf{i} + \cos t\,\mathbf{j} + \sin t\,\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{i} - \sin t\,\mathbf{j} + \cos t\,\mathbf{k}$
7. $\mathbf{a} = \langle t, 1, 1/t\rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle t^2, t^2, 1\rangle$

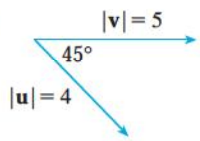
8. If $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$, find $\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b}$. Sketch **a**, **b**, and $\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b}$ as vectors starting at the origin.

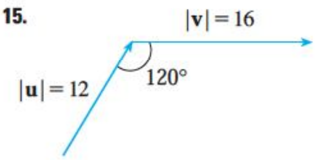
9–12 Find the vector, not with determinants, but by using properties of cross products.

9. $(\mathbf{i}\times\mathbf{j})\times\mathbf{k}$
10. $\mathbf{k}\times(\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j})$
11. $(\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k})\times(\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{i})$
12. $(\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j})\times(\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j})$

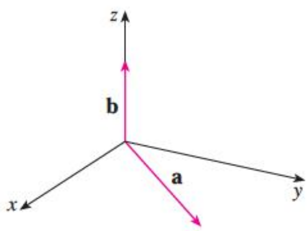
13. State whether each expression is meaningful. If not, explain why. If so, state whether it is a vector or a scalar.
    (a) $\mathbf{a}\cdot(\mathbf{b}\times\mathbf{c})$ (b) $\mathbf{a}\times(\mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{c})$
    (c) $\mathbf{a}\times(\mathbf{b}\times\mathbf{c})$ (d) $\mathbf{a}\cdot(\mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{c})$
    (e) $(\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b})\times(\mathbf{c}\cdot\mathbf{d})$ (f) $(\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b})\cdot(\mathbf{c}\times\mathbf{d})$

14–15 Find $|\mathbf{u}\times\mathbf{v}|$ and determine whether $\mathbf{u}\times\mathbf{v}$ is directed into the page or out of the page.

14.


15.


16. The figure shows a vector **a** in the *xy*-plane and a vector **b** in the direction of **k**. Their lengths are $|\mathbf{a}| = 3$ and $|\mathbf{b}| = 2$.
    (a) Find $|\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b}|$.
    (b) Use the right-hand rule to decide whether the components of $\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b}$ are positive, negative, or 0.



17. If $\mathbf{a} = \langle 2, -1, 3\rangle$ and $\mathbf{b} = \langle 4, 2, 1\rangle$, find $\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b}$ and $\mathbf{b}\times\mathbf{a}$.
18. If $\mathbf{a} = \langle 1, 0, 1\rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 2, 1, -1\rangle$, and $\mathbf{c} = \langle 0, 1, 3\rangle$, show that $\mathbf{a}\times(\mathbf{b}\times\mathbf{c}) \neq (\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b})\times\mathbf{c}$.
19. Find two unit vectors orthogonal to both $\langle 3, 2, 1\rangle$ and $\langle -1, 1, 0\rangle$.

1. Homework Hints available at stewartcalculus.com

20. Find two unit vectors orthogonal to both $\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$.

21. Show that $\mathbf{0} \times \mathbf{a} = \mathbf{0} = \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{0}$ for any vector $\mathbf{a}$ in V_3.

22. Show that $(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{b} = 0$ for all vectors $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ in V_3.

23. Prove Property 1 of Theorem 11.

24. Prove Property 2 of Theorem 11.

25. Prove Property 3 of Theorem 11.

26. Prove Property 4 of Theorem 11.

27. Find the area of the parallelogram with vertices $A(-2, 1)$, $B(0, 4)$, $C(4, 2)$, and $D(2, -1)$.

28. Find the area of the parallelogram with vertices $K(1, 2, 3)$, $L(1, 3, 6)$, $M(3, 8, 6)$, and $N(3, 7, 3)$.

29–32 (a) Find a nonzero vector orthogonal to the plane through the points P, Q, and R, and (b) find the area of triangle PQR.

29. $P(1, 0, 1)$, $Q(-2, 1, 3)$, $R(4, 2, 5)$

30. $P(0, 0, -3)$, $Q(4, 2, 0)$, $R(3, 3, 1)$

31. $P(0, -2, 0)$, $Q(4, 1, -2)$, $R(5, 3, 1)$

32. $P(-1, 3, 1)$, $Q(0, 5, 2)$, $R(4, 3, -1)$

33–34 Find the volume of the parallelepiped determined by the vectors $\mathbf{a}$, $\mathbf{b}$, and $\mathbf{c}$.

33. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 1, 2, 3 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle -1, 1, 2 \rangle$, $\mathbf{c} = \langle 2, 1, 4 \rangle$

34. $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$

35–36 Find the volume of the parallelepiped with adjacent edges PQ, PR, and PS.

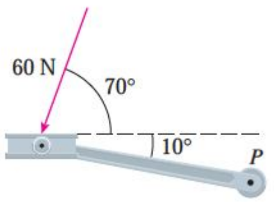
35. $P(-2, 1, 0)$, $Q(2, 3, 2)$, $R(1, 4, -1)$, $S(3, 6, 1)$

36. $P(3, 0, 1)$, $Q(-1, 2, 5)$, $R(5, 1, -1)$, $S(0, 4, 2)$

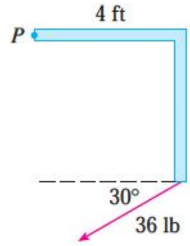
37. Use the scalar triple product to verify that the vectors $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{v} = 3\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$, and $\mathbf{w} = 5\mathbf{i} + 9\mathbf{j} - 4\mathbf{k}$ are coplanar.

38. Use the scalar triple product to determine whether the points $A(1, 3, 2)$, $B(3, -1, 6)$, $C(5, 2, 0)$, and $D(3, 6, -4)$ lie in the same plane.

39. A bicycle pedal is pushed by a foot with a 60-N force as shown. The shaft of the pedal is 18 cm long. Find the magnitude of the torque about P.



40. Find the magnitude of the torque about P if a 36-lb force is applied as shown.



41. A wrench 30 cm long lies along the positive y-axis and grips a bolt at the origin. A force is applied in the direction $\langle 0, 3, -4 \rangle$ at the end of the wrench. Find the magnitude of the force needed to supply 100 N·m of torque to the bolt.

42. Let $\mathbf{v} = 5\mathbf{j}$ and let $\mathbf{u}$ be a vector with length 3 that starts at the origin and rotates in the xy-plane. Find the maximum and minimum values of the length of the vector $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}$. In what direction does $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}$ point?

43. If $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = \sqrt{3}$ and $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = \langle 1, 2, 2 \rangle$, find the angle between $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$.

44. (a) Find all vectors $\mathbf{v}$ such that

$$\langle 1, 2, 1 \rangle \times \mathbf{v} = \langle 3, 1, -5 \rangle$$

(b) Explain why there is no vector $\mathbf{v}$ such that

$$\langle 1, 2, 1 \rangle \times \mathbf{v} = \langle 3, 1, 5 \rangle$$

45. (a) Let P be a point not on the line L that passes through the points Q and R. Show that the distance d from the point P to the line L is

$$d = \frac{|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}|}{|\mathbf{a}|}$$

where $\mathbf{a} = \overrightarrow{QR}$ and $\mathbf{b} = \overrightarrow{QP}$.

(b) Use the formula in part (a) to find the distance from the point $P(1, 1, 1)$ to the line through $Q(0, 6, 8)$ and $R(-1, 4, 7)$.

46. (a) Let P be a point not on the plane that passes through the points Q, R, and S. Show that the distance d from P to the plane is

$$d = \frac{|\mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c})|}{|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}|}$$

where $\mathbf{a} = \overrightarrow{QR}$, $\mathbf{b} = \overrightarrow{QS}$, and $\mathbf{c} = \overrightarrow{QP}$.

(b) Use the formula in part (a) to find the distance from the point $P(2, 1, 4)$ to the plane through the points $Q(1, 0, 0)$, $R(0, 2, 0)$, and $S(0, 0, 3)$.

47. Show that $|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}|^2 = |\mathbf{a}|^2 |\mathbf{b}|^2 - (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b})^2$.

48. If $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c} = \mathbf{0}$, show that

$$\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c} = \mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{a}$$

49. Prove that $(\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}) \times (\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) = 2(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b})$.

50. Prove Property 6 of Theorem 11, that is,

$$\mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) = (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c})\mathbf{b} - (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b})\mathbf{c}$$

51. Use Exercise 50 to prove that

$$\mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) + \mathbf{b} \times (\mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{a}) + \mathbf{c} \times (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) = \mathbf{0}$$

52. Prove that

$$(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot (\mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{d}) = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c} & \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{c} \\ \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{d} & \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{d} \end{vmatrix}$$

53. Suppose that $\mathbf{a} \neq \mathbf{0}$.
(a) If $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c}$, does it follow that $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{c}$?
(b) If $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{c}$, does it follow that $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{c}$?
(c) If $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c}$ and $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{c}$, does it follow that $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{c}$?

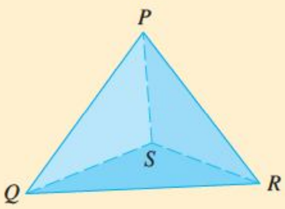
54. If $\mathbf{v}_1$, $\mathbf{v}_2$, and $\mathbf{v}_3$ are noncoplanar vectors, let

$$\mathbf{k}_1 = \frac{\mathbf{v}_2 \times \mathbf{v}_3}{\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot (\mathbf{v}_2 \times \mathbf{v}_3)} \qquad \mathbf{k}_2 = \frac{\mathbf{v}_3 \times \mathbf{v}_1}{\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot (\mathbf{v}_2 \times \mathbf{v}_3)}$$

$$\mathbf{k}_3 = \frac{\mathbf{v}_1 \times \mathbf{v}_2}{\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot (\mathbf{v}_2 \times \mathbf{v}_3)}$$

(These vectors occur in the study of crystallography. Vectors of the form $n_1\mathbf{v}_1 + n_2\mathbf{v}_2 + n_3\mathbf{v}_3$, where each n_i is an integer, form a *lattice* for a crystal. Vectors written similarly in terms of $\mathbf{k}_1$, $\mathbf{k}_2$, and $\mathbf{k}_3$ form the *reciprocal lattice*.)
(a) Show that $\mathbf{k}_i$ is perpendicular to $\mathbf{v}_j$ if $i \neq j$.
(b) Show that $\mathbf{k}_i \cdot \mathbf{v}_i = 1$ for $i = 1, 2, 3$.
(c) Show that $\mathbf{k}_1 \cdot (\mathbf{k}_2 \times \mathbf{k}_3) = \dfrac{1}{\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot (\mathbf{v}_2 \times \mathbf{v}_3)}$.

DISCOVERY PROJECT THE GEOMETRY OF A TETRAHEDRON



A tetrahedron is a solid with four vertices, P, Q, R, and S, and four triangular faces, as shown in the figure.

1. Let $\mathbf{v}_1$, $\mathbf{v}_2$, $\mathbf{v}_3$, and $\mathbf{v}_4$ be vectors with lengths equal to the areas of the faces opposite the vertices P, Q, R, and S, respectively, and directions perpendicular to the respective faces and pointing outward. Show that

$$\mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{v}_2 + \mathbf{v}_3 + \mathbf{v}_4 = \mathbf{0}$$

2. The volume V of a tetrahedron is one-third the distance from a vertex to the opposite face, times the area of that face.
(a) Find a formula for the volume of a tetrahedron in terms of the coordinates of its vertices P, Q, R, and S.
(b) Find the volume of the tetrahedron whose vertices are $P(1, 1, 1)$, $Q(1, 2, 3)$, $R(1, 1, 2)$, and $S(3, -1, 2)$.

3. Suppose the tetrahedron in the figure has a trirectangular vertex S. (This means that the three angles at S are all right angles.) Let A, B, and C be the areas of the three faces that meet at S, and let D be the area of the opposite face PQR. Using the result of Problem 1, or otherwise, show that

$$D^2 = A^2 + B^2 + C^2$$

(This is a three-dimensional version of the Pythagorean Theorem.)

12.5 Equations of Lines and Planes

A line in the xy-plane is determined when a point on the line and the direction of the line (its slope or angle of inclination) are given. The equation of the line can then be written using the point-slope form.

Likewise, a line L in three-dimensional space is determined when we know a point $P_0(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ on L and the direction of L. In three dimensions the direction of a line is conveniently described by a vector, so we let $\mathbf{v}$ be a vector parallel to L. Let $P(x, y, z)$ be an arbitrary point on L and let $\mathbf{r}_0$ and $\mathbf{r}$ be the position vectors of P_0 and P (that is, they have

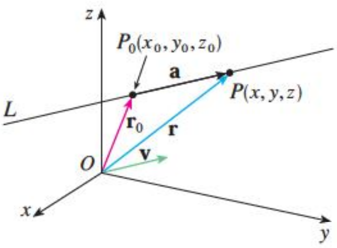


FIGURE 1

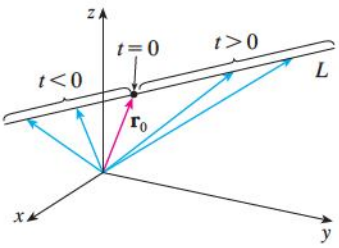


FIGURE 2

representations $\overrightarrow{OP_0}$ and $\overrightarrow{OP}$). If **a** is the vector with representation $\overrightarrow{P_0P}$, as in Figure 1, then the Triangle Law for vector addition gives $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}_0 + \mathbf{a}$. But, since **a** and **v** are parallel vectors, there is a scalar t such that $\mathbf{a} = t\mathbf{v}$. Thus

1 $$\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}_0 + t\mathbf{v}$$

which is a **vector equation** of L. Each value of the **parameter** t gives the position vector **r** of a point on L. In other words, as t varies, the line is traced out by the tip of the vector **r**. As Figure 2 indicates, positive values of t correspond to points on L that lie on one side of P_0, whereas negative values of t correspond to points that lie on the other side of P_0.

If the vector **v** that gives the direction of the line L is written in component form as $\mathbf{v} = \langle a, b, c \rangle$, then we have $t\mathbf{v} = \langle ta, tb, tc \rangle$. We can also write $\mathbf{r} = \langle x, y, z \rangle$ and $\mathbf{r}_0 = \langle x_0, y_0, z_0 \rangle$, so the vector equation **1** becomes

$$\langle x, y, z \rangle = \langle x_0 + ta, y_0 + tb, z_0 + tc \rangle$$

Two vectors are equal if and only if corresponding components are equal. Therefore we have the three scalar equations:

2 $$x = x_0 + at \qquad y = y_0 + bt \qquad z = z_0 + ct$$

where $t \in \mathbb{R}$. These equations are called **parametric equations** of the line L through the point $P_0(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ and parallel to the vector $\mathbf{v} = \langle a, b, c \rangle$. Each value of the parameter t gives a point (x, y, z) on L.

Figure 3 shows the line L in Example 1 and its relation to the given point and to the vector that gives its direction.

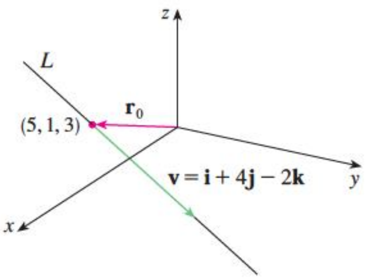


FIGURE 3

EXAMPLE 1
(a) Find a vector equation and parametric equations for the line that passes through the point (5, 1, 3) and is parallel to the vector $\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$.
(b) Find two other points on the line.

SOLUTION
(a) Here $\mathbf{r}_0 = \langle 5, 1, 3 \rangle = 5\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$, so the vector equation **1** becomes

$$\mathbf{r} = (5\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}) + t(\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k})$$

or $$\mathbf{r} = (5 + t)\,\mathbf{i} + (1 + 4t)\,\mathbf{j} + (3 - 2t)\,\mathbf{k}$$

Parametric equations are

$$x = 5 + t \qquad y = 1 + 4t \qquad z = 3 - 2t$$

(b) Choosing the parameter value $t = 1$ gives $x = 6$, $y = 5$, and $z = 1$, so (6, 5, 1) is a point on the line. Similarly, $t = -1$ gives the point (4, −3, 5).

The vector equation and parametric equations of a line are not unique. If we change the point or the parameter or choose a different parallel vector, then the equations change. For instance, if, instead of (5, 1, 3), we choose the point (6, 5, 1) in Example 1, then the parametric equations of the line become

$$x = 6 + t \qquad y = 5 + 4t \qquad z = 1 - 2t$$

Or, if we stay with the point $(5, 1, 3)$ but choose the parallel vector $2\mathbf{i} + 8\mathbf{j} - 4\mathbf{k}$, we arrive at the equations

$$x = 5 + 2t \qquad y = 1 + 8t \qquad z = 3 - 4t$$

In general, if a vector $\mathbf{v} = \langle a, b, c \rangle$ is used to describe the direction of a line L, then the numbers a, b, and c are called **direction numbers** of L. Since any vector parallel to $\mathbf{v}$ could also be used, we see that any three numbers proportional to a, b, and c could also be used as a set of direction numbers for L.

Another way of describing a line L is to eliminate the parameter t from Equations 2. If none of a, b, or c is 0, we can solve each of these equations for t, equate the results, and obtain

3

$$\frac{x - x_0}{a} = \frac{y - y_0}{b} = \frac{z - z_0}{c}$$

These equations are called **symmetric equations** of L. Notice that the numbers a, b, and c that appear in the denominators of Equations 3 are direction numbers of L, that is, components of a vector parallel to L. If one of a, b, or c is 0, we can still eliminate t. For instance, if $a = 0$, we could write the equations of L as

$$x = x_0 \qquad \frac{y - y_0}{b} = \frac{z - z_0}{c}$$

This means that L lies in the vertical plane $x = x_0$.

Figure 4 shows the line L in Example 2 and the point P where it intersects the xy-plane.

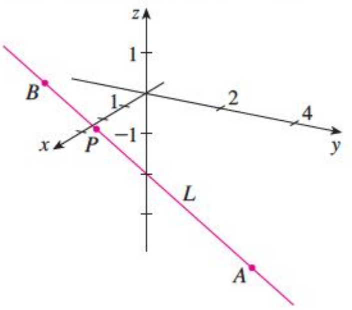


FIGURE 4

EXAMPLE 2

(a) Find parametric equations and symmetric equations of the line that passes through the points $A(2, 4, -3)$ and $B(3, -1, 1)$.

(b) At what point does this line intersect the xy-plane?

SOLUTION

(a) We are not explicitly given a vector parallel to the line, but observe that the vector $\mathbf{v}$ with representation $\overrightarrow{AB}$ is parallel to the line and

$$\mathbf{v} = \langle 3 - 2, -1 - 4, 1 - (-3) \rangle = \langle 1, -5, 4 \rangle$$

Thus direction numbers are $a = 1$, $b = -5$, and $c = 4$. Taking the point $(2, 4, -3)$ as P_0, we see that parametric equations 2 are

$$x = 2 + t \qquad y = 4 - 5t \qquad z = -3 + 4t$$

and symmetric equations 3 are

$$\frac{x - 2}{1} = \frac{y - 4}{-5} = \frac{z + 3}{4}$$

(b) The line intersects the xy-plane when $z = 0$, so we put $z = 0$ in the symmetric equations and obtain

$$\frac{x - 2}{1} = \frac{y - 4}{-5} = \frac{3}{4}$$

This gives $x = \frac{11}{4}$ and $y = \frac{1}{4}$, so the line intersects the xy-plane at the point $\left(\frac{11}{4}, \frac{1}{4}, 0\right)$.

In general, the procedure of Example 2 shows that direction numbers of the line L through the points $P_0(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ and $P_1(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ are $x_1 - x_0$, $y_1 - y_0$, and $z_1 - z_0$ and so symmetric equations of L are

$$\frac{x - x_0}{x_1 - x_0} = \frac{y - y_0}{y_1 - y_0} = \frac{z - z_0}{z_1 - z_0}$$

Often, we need a description, not of an entire line, but of just a line segment. How, for instance, could we describe the line segment AB in Example 2? If we put $t = 0$ in the parametric equations in Example 2(a), we get the point $(2, 4, -3)$ and if we put $t = 1$ we get $(3, -1, 1)$. So the line segment AB is described by the parametric equations

$$x = 2 + t \qquad y = 4 - 5t \qquad z = -3 + 4t \qquad 0 \leq t \leq 1$$

or by the corresponding vector equation

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = \langle 2 + t, 4 - 5t, -3 + 4t \rangle \qquad 0 \leq t \leq 1$$

In general, we know from Equation 1 that the vector equation of a line through the (tip of the) vector $\mathbf{r}_0$ in the direction of a vector $\mathbf{v}$ is $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}_0 + t\mathbf{v}$. If the line also passes through (the tip of) $\mathbf{r}_1$, then we can take $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_0$ and so its vector equation is

$$\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}_0 + t(\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_0) = (1 - t)\mathbf{r}_0 + t\mathbf{r}_1$$

The line segment from $\mathbf{r}_0$ to $\mathbf{r}_1$ is given by the parameter interval $0 \leq t \leq 1$.

4 The line segment from $\mathbf{r}_0$ to $\mathbf{r}_1$ is given by the vector equation

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = (1 - t)\mathbf{r}_0 + t\mathbf{r}_1 \qquad 0 \leq t \leq 1$$

The lines L_1 and L_2 in Example 3, shown in Figure 5, are skew lines.

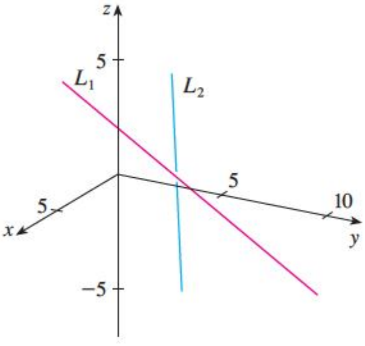


FIGURE 5

V EXAMPLE 3 Show that the lines L_1 and L_2 with parametric equations

$$x = 1 + t \qquad y = -2 + 3t \qquad z = 4 - t$$
$$x = 2s \qquad y = 3 + s \qquad z = -3 + 4s$$

are **skew lines**; that is, they do not intersect and are not parallel (and therefore do not lie in the same plane).

SOLUTION The lines are not parallel because the corresponding vectors $\langle 1, 3, -1 \rangle$ and $\langle 2, 1, 4 \rangle$ are not parallel. (Their components are not proportional.) If L_1 and L_2 had a point of intersection, there would be values of t and s such that

$$1 + t = 2s$$
$$-2 + 3t = 3 + s$$
$$4 - t = -3 + 4s$$

But if we solve the first two equations, we get $t = \frac{11}{5}$ and $s = \frac{8}{5}$, and these values don't satisfy the third equation. Therefore there are no values of t and s that satisfy the three equations, so L_1 and L_2 do not intersect. Thus L_1 and L_2 are skew lines.

Planes

Although a line in space is determined by a point and a direction, a plane in space is more difficult to describe. A single vector parallel to a plane is not enough to convey the "direction" of the plane, but a vector perpendicular to the plane does completely specify

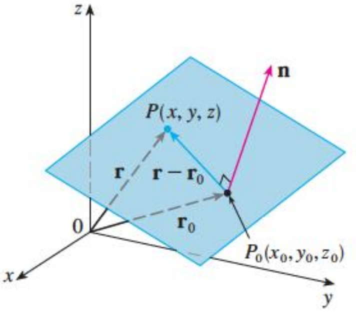


FIGURE 6

its direction. Thus a plane in space is determined by a point $P_0(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ in the plane and a vector $\mathbf{n}$ that is orthogonal to the plane. This orthogonal vector $\mathbf{n}$ is called a **normal vector**. Let $P(x, y, z)$ be an arbitrary point in the plane, and let $\mathbf{r}_0$ and $\mathbf{r}$ be the position vectors of P_0 and P. Then the vector $\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0$ is represented by $\overrightarrow{P_0P}$. (See Figure 6.) The normal vector $\mathbf{n}$ is orthogonal to every vector in the given plane. In particular, $\mathbf{n}$ is orthogonal to $\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0$ and so we have

5 $$\mathbf{n} \cdot (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0) = 0$$

which can be rewritten as

6 $$\mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{r} = \mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{r}_0$$

Either Equation 5 or Equation 6 is called a **vector equation of the plane**.

To obtain a scalar equation for the plane, we write $\mathbf{n} = \langle a, b, c \rangle$, $\mathbf{r} = \langle x, y, z \rangle$, and $\mathbf{r}_0 = \langle x_0, y_0, z_0 \rangle$. Then the vector equation **5** becomes

$$\langle a, b, c \rangle \cdot \langle x - x_0, y - y_0, z - z_0 \rangle = 0$$

or

7 $$a(x - x_0) + b(y - y_0) + c(z - z_0) = 0$$

Equation 7 is the **scalar equation of the plane through $P_0(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ with normal vector $\mathbf{n} = \langle a, b, c \rangle$**.

V EXAMPLE 4 Find an equation of the plane through the point $(2, 4, -1)$ with normal vector $\mathbf{n} = \langle 2, 3, 4 \rangle$. Find the intercepts and sketch the plane.

SOLUTION Putting $a = 2$, $b = 3$, $c = 4$, $x_0 = 2$, $y_0 = 4$, and $z_0 = -1$ in Equation 7, we see that an equation of the plane is

$$2(x - 2) + 3(y - 4) + 4(z + 1) = 0$$

or $$2x + 3y + 4z = 12$$

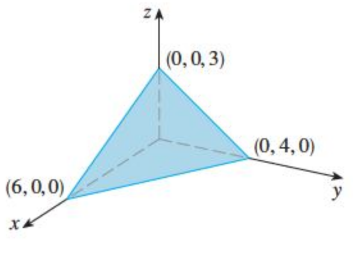


FIGURE 7

To find the x-intercept we set $y = z = 0$ in this equation and obtain $x = 6$. Similarly, the y-intercept is 4 and the z-intercept is 3. This enables us to sketch the portion of the plane that lies in the first octant (see Figure 7).

By collecting terms in Equation 7 as we did in Example 4, we can rewrite the equation of a plane as

8 $$ax + by + cz + d = 0$$

where $d = -(ax_0 + by_0 + cz_0)$. Equation 8 is called a **linear equation** in x, y, and z. Conversely, it can be shown that if a, b, and c are not all 0, then the linear equation **8** represents a plane with normal vector $\langle a, b, c \rangle$. (See Exercise 81.)

Figure 8 shows the portion of the plane in Example 5 that is enclosed by triangle PQR.

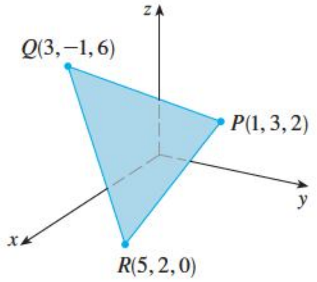


FIGURE 8

EXAMPLE 5 Find an equation of the plane that passes through the points $P(1, 3, 2)$, $Q(3, -1, 6)$, and $R(5, 2, 0)$.

SOLUTION The vectors $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ corresponding to $\overrightarrow{PQ}$ and $\overrightarrow{PR}$ are

$$\mathbf{a} = \langle 2, -4, 4 \rangle \qquad \mathbf{b} = \langle 4, -1, -2 \rangle$$

Since both $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ lie in the plane, their cross product $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$ is orthogonal to the plane and can be taken as the normal vector. Thus

$$\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ 2 & -4 & 4 \\ 4 & -1 & -2 \end{vmatrix} = 12\mathbf{i} + 20\mathbf{j} + 14\mathbf{k}$$

With the point $P(1, 3, 2)$ and the normal vector $\mathbf{n}$, an equation of the plane is

$$12(x - 1) + 20(y - 3) + 14(z - 2) = 0$$

or

$$6x + 10y + 7z = 50$$

EXAMPLE 6 Find the point at which the line with parametric equations $x = 2 + 3t$, $y = -4t$, $z = 5 + t$ intersects the plane $4x + 5y - 2z = 18$.

SOLUTION We substitute the expressions for x, y, and z from the parametric equations into the equation of the plane:

$$4(2 + 3t) + 5(-4t) - 2(5 + t) = 18$$

This simplifies to $-10t = 20$, so $t = -2$. Therefore the point of intersection occurs when the parameter value is $t = -2$. Then $x = 2 + 3(-2) = -4$, $y = -4(-2) = 8$, $z = 5 - 2 = 3$ and so the point of intersection is $(-4, 8, 3)$.

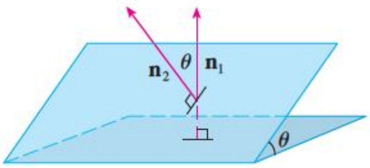


FIGURE 9

Two planes are **parallel** if their normal vectors are parallel. For instance, the planes $x + 2y - 3z = 4$ and $2x + 4y - 6z = 3$ are parallel because their normal vectors are $\mathbf{n}_1 = \langle 1, 2, -3 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{n}_2 = \langle 2, 4, -6 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{n}_2 = 2\mathbf{n}_1$. If two planes are not parallel, then they intersect in a straight line and the angle between the two planes is defined as the acute angle between their normal vectors (see angle θ in Figure 9).

Figure 10 shows the planes in Example 7 and their line of intersection L.

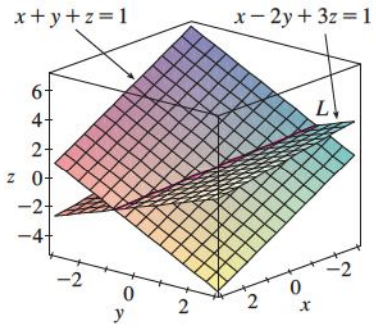


FIGURE 10

V EXAMPLE 7

(a) Find the angle between the planes $x + y + z = 1$ and $x - 2y + 3z = 1$.

(b) Find symmetric equations for the line of intersection L of these two planes.

SOLUTION

(a) The normal vectors of these planes are

$$\mathbf{n}_1 = \langle 1, 1, 1 \rangle \qquad \mathbf{n}_2 = \langle 1, -2, 3 \rangle$$

and so, if θ is the angle between the planes, Corollary 12.3.6 gives

$$\cos\theta = \frac{\mathbf{n}_1 \cdot \mathbf{n}_2}{|\mathbf{n}_1||\mathbf{n}_2|} = \frac{1(1) + 1(-2) + 1(3)}{\sqrt{1 + 1 + 1}\,\sqrt{1 + 4 + 9}} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{42}}$$

$$\theta = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{2}{\sqrt{42}}\right) \approx 72°$$

(b) We first need to find a point on L. For instance, we can find the point where the line intersects the xy-plane by setting $z = 0$ in the equations of both planes. This gives the equations $x + y = 1$ and $x - 2y = 1$, whose solution is $x = 1$, $y = 0$. So the point $(1, 0, 0)$ lies on L.

Now we observe that, since L lies in both planes, it is perpendicular to both of the normal vectors. Thus a vector $\mathbf{v}$ parallel to L is given by the cross product

Another way to find the line of intersection is to solve the equations of the planes for two of the variables in terms of the third, which can be taken as the parameter.

$$\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{n}_1 \times \mathbf{n}_2 = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -2 & 3 \end{vmatrix} = 5\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}$$

and so the symmetric equations of L can be written as

$$\frac{x-1}{5} = \frac{y}{-2} = \frac{z}{-3}$$

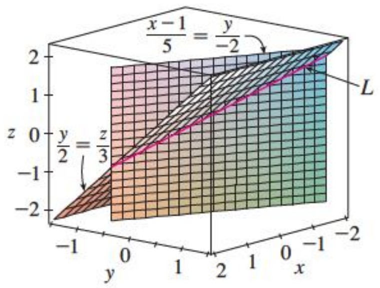


FIGURE 11

Figure 11 shows how the line L in Example 7 can also be regarded as the line of intersection of planes derived from its symmetric equations.

NOTE Since a linear equation in x, y, and z represents a plane and two nonparallel planes intersect in a line, it follows that two linear equations can represent a line. The points (x, y, z) that satisfy both $a_1x + b_1y + c_1z + d_1 = 0$ and $a_2x + b_2y + c_2z + d_2 = 0$ lie on both of these planes, and so the pair of linear equations represents the line of intersection of the planes (if they are not parallel). For instance, in Example 7 the line L was given as the line of intersection of the planes $x + y + z = 1$ and $x - 2y + 3z = 1$. The symmetric equations that we found for L could be written as

$$\frac{x-1}{5} = \frac{y}{-2} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{y}{-2} = \frac{z}{-3}$$

which is again a pair of linear equations. They exhibit L as the line of intersection of the planes $(x - 1)/5 = y/(-2)$ and $y/(-2) = z/(-3)$. (See Figure 11.)

In general, when we write the equations of a line in the symmetric form

$$\frac{x - x_0}{a} = \frac{y - y_0}{b} = \frac{z - z_0}{c}$$

we can regard the line as the line of intersection of the two planes

$$\frac{x - x_0}{a} = \frac{y - y_0}{b} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{y - y_0}{b} = \frac{z - z_0}{c}$$

EXAMPLE 8 Find a formula for the distance D from a point $P_1(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ to the plane $ax + by + cz + d = 0$.

SOLUTION Let $P_0(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ be any point in the given plane and let $\mathbf{b}$ be the vector corresponding to $\overrightarrow{P_0P_1}$. Then

$$\mathbf{b} = \langle x_1 - x_0, y_1 - y_0, z_1 - z_0 \rangle$$

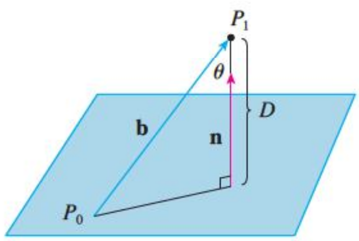


FIGURE 12

From Figure 12 you can see that the distance D from P_1 to the plane is equal to the absolute value of the scalar projection of $\mathbf{b}$ onto the normal vector $\mathbf{n} = \langle a, b, c \rangle$. (See Section 12.3.) Thus

$$D = |\text{comp}_{\mathbf{n}}\,\mathbf{b}| = \frac{|\mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{b}|}{|\mathbf{n}|}$$

$$= \frac{|a(x_1 - x_0) + b(y_1 - y_0) + c(z_1 - z_0)|}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + c^2}}$$

$$= \frac{|(ax_1 + by_1 + cz_1) - (ax_0 + by_0 + cz_0)|}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + c^2}}$$

Since P_0 lies in the plane, its coordinates satisfy the equation of the plane and so we have $ax_0 + by_0 + cz_0 + d = 0$. Thus the formula for D can be written as

9
$$D = \frac{|ax_1 + by_1 + cz_1 + d|}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + c^2}}$$

EXAMPLE 9 Find the distance between the parallel planes $10x + 2y - 2z = 5$ and $5x + y - z = 1$.

SOLUTION First we note that the planes are parallel because their normal vectors $\langle 10, 2, -2 \rangle$ and $\langle 5, 1, -1 \rangle$ are parallel. To find the distance D between the planes, we choose any point on one plane and calculate its distance to the other plane. In particular, if we put $y = z = 0$ in the equation of the first plane, we get $10x = 5$ and so $\left(\frac{1}{2}, 0, 0\right)$ is a point in this plane. By Formula 9, the distance between $\left(\frac{1}{2}, 0, 0\right)$ and the plane $5x + y - z - 1 = 0$ is

$$D = \frac{\left|5\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) + 1(0) - 1(0) - 1\right|}{\sqrt{5^2 + 1^2 + (-1)^2}} = \frac{\frac{3}{2}}{3\sqrt{3}} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{6}$$

So the distance between the planes is $\sqrt{3}/6$.

EXAMPLE 10 In Example 3 we showed that the lines

$$L_1:\quad x = 1 + t \qquad y = -2 + 3t \qquad z = 4 - t$$
$$L_2:\quad x = 2s \qquad y = 3 + s \qquad z = -3 + 4s$$

are skew. Find the distance between them.

SOLUTION Since the two lines L_1 and L_2 are skew, they can be viewed as lying on two parallel planes P_1 and P_2. The distance between L_1 and L_2 is the same as the distance between P_1 and P_2, which can be computed as in Example 9. The common normal vector to both planes must be orthogonal to both $\mathbf{v}_1 = \langle 1, 3, -1 \rangle$ (the direction of L_1) and $\mathbf{v}_2 = \langle 2, 1, 4 \rangle$ (the direction of L_2). So a normal vector is

$$\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{v}_1 \times \mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ 1 & 3 & -1 \\ 2 & 1 & 4 \end{vmatrix} = 13\mathbf{i} - 6\mathbf{j} - 5\mathbf{k}$$

If we put $s = 0$ in the equations of L_2, we get the point $(0, 3, -3)$ on L_2 and so an equation for P_2 is

$$13(x - 0) - 6(y - 3) - 5(z + 3) = 0 \qquad \text{or} \qquad 13x - 6y - 5z + 3 = 0$$

If we now set $t = 0$ in the equations for L_1, we get the point $(1, -2, 4)$ on P_1. So the distance between L_1 and L_2 is the same as the distance from $(1, -2, 4)$ to $13x - 6y - 5z + 3 = 0$. By Formula 9, this distance is

$$D = \frac{|13(1) - 6(-2) - 5(4) + 3|}{\sqrt{13^2 + (-6)^2 + (-5)^2}} = \frac{8}{\sqrt{230}} \approx 0.53$$

12.5 Exercises

1. Determine whether each statement is true or false.
   (a) Two lines parallel to a third line are parallel.
   (b) Two lines perpendicular to a third line are parallel.
   (c) Two planes parallel to a third plane are parallel.
   (d) Two planes perpendicular to a third plane are parallel.
   (e) Two lines parallel to a plane are parallel.
   (f) Two lines perpendicular to a plane are parallel.
   (g) Two planes parallel to a line are parallel.
   (h) Two planes perpendicular to a line are parallel.
   (i) Two planes either intersect or are parallel.
   (j) Two lines either intersect or are parallel.
   (k) A plane and a line either intersect or are parallel.

2–5 Find a vector equation and parametric equations for the line.

2. The line through the point $(6, -5, 2)$ and parallel to the vector $\langle 1, 3, -\frac{2}{3} \rangle$

3. The line through the point $(2, 2.4, 3.5)$ and parallel to the vector $3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$

4. The line through the point $(0, 14, -10)$ and parallel to the line $x = -1 + 2t$, $y = 6 - 3t$, $z = 3 + 9t$

5. The line through the point $(1, 0, 6)$ and perpendicular to the plane $x + 3y + z = 5$

6–12 Find parametric equations and symmetric equations for the line.

6. The line through the origin and the point $(4, 3, -1)$

7. The line through the points $(0, \frac{1}{2}, 1)$ and $(2, 1, -3)$

8. The line through the points $(1.0, 2.4, 4.6)$ and $(2.6, 1.2, 0.3)$

9. The line through the points $(-8, 1, 4)$ and $(3, -2, 4)$

10. The line through $(2, 1, 0)$ and perpendicular to both $\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$

11. The line through $(1, -1, 1)$ and parallel to the line $x + 2 = \frac{1}{2}y = z - 3$

12. The line of intersection of the planes $x + 2y + 3z = 1$ and $x - y + z = 1$

13. Is the line through $(-4, -6, 1)$ and $(-2, 0, -3)$ parallel to the line through $(10, 18, 4)$ and $(5, 3, 14)$?

14. Is the line through $(-2, 4, 0)$ and $(1, 1, 1)$ perpendicular to the line through $(2, 3, 4)$ and $(3, -1, -8)$?

15. (a) Find symmetric equations for the line that passes through the point $(1, -5, 6)$ and is parallel to the vector $\langle -1, 2, -3 \rangle$.
    (b) Find the points in which the required line in part (a) intersects the coordinate planes.

16. (a) Find parametric equations for the line through $(2, 4, 6)$ that is perpendicular to the plane $x - y + 3z = 7$.
    (b) In what points does this line intersect the coordinate planes?

17. Find a vector equation for the line segment from $(2, -1, 4)$ to $(4, 6, 1)$.

18. Find parametric equations for the line segment from $(10, 3, 1)$ to $(5, 6, -3)$.

19–22 Determine whether the lines L_1 and L_2 are parallel, skew, or intersecting. If they intersect, find the point of intersection.

19. L_1: $x = 3 + 2t, \quad y = 4 - t, \quad z = 1 + 3t$
    L_2: $x = 1 + 4s, \quad y = 3 - 2s, \quad z = 4 + 5s$

20. L_1: $x = 5 - 12t, \quad y = 3 + 9t, \quad z = 1 - 3t$
    L_2: $x = 3 + 8s, \quad y = -6s, \quad z = 7 + 2s$

21. L_1: $\dfrac{x-2}{1} = \dfrac{y-3}{-2} = \dfrac{z-1}{-3}$
    L_2: $\dfrac{x-3}{1} = \dfrac{y+4}{3} = \dfrac{z-2}{-7}$

22. L_1: $\dfrac{x}{1} = \dfrac{y-1}{-1} = \dfrac{z-2}{3}$
    L_2: $\dfrac{x-2}{2} = \dfrac{y-3}{-2} = \dfrac{z}{7}$

23–40 Find an equation of the plane.

23. The plane through the origin and perpendicular to the vector $\langle 1, -2, 5 \rangle$

24. The plane through the point $(5, 3, 5)$ and with normal vector $2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$

25. The plane through the point $(-1, \frac{1}{2}, 3)$ and with normal vector $\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$

26. The plane through the point $(2, 0, 1)$ and perpendicular to the line $x = 3t$, $y = 2 - t$, $z = 3 + 4t$

27. The plane through the point $(1, -1, -1)$ and parallel to the plane $5x - y - z = 6$

28. The plane through the point $(2, 4, 6)$ and parallel to the plane $z = x + y$

29. The plane through the point $(1, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{3})$ and parallel to the plane $x + y + z = 0$

30. The plane that contains the line $x = 1 + t$, $y = 2 - t$, $z = 4 - 3t$ and is parallel to the plane $5x + 2y + z = 1$

31. The plane through the points $(0, 1, 1)$, $(1, 0, 1)$, and $(1, 1, 0)$

32. The plane through the origin and the points $(2, -4, 6)$ and $(5, 1, 3)$

1. Homework Hints available at stewartcalculus.com

33. The plane through the points $(3, -1, 2)$, $(8, 2, 4)$, and $(-1, -2, -3)$

34. The plane that passes through the point $(1, 2, 3)$ and contains the line $x = 3t$, $y = 1 + t$, $z = 2 - t$

35. The plane that passes through the point $(6, 0, -2)$ and contains the line $x = 4 - 2t$, $y = 3 + 5t$, $z = 7 + 4t$

36. The plane that passes through the point $(1, -1, 1)$ and contains the line with symmetric equations $x = 2y = 3z$

37. The plane that passes through the point $(-1, 2, 1)$ and contains the line of intersection of the planes $x + y - z = 2$ and $2x - y + 3z = 1$

38. The plane that passes through the points $(0, -2, 5)$ and $(-1, 3, 1)$ and is perpendicular to the plane $2z = 5x + 4y$

39. The plane that passes through the point $(1, 5, 1)$ and is perpendicular to the planes $2x + y - 2z = 2$ and $x + 3z = 4$

40. The plane that passes through the line of intersection of the planes $x - z = 1$ and $y + 2z = 3$ and is perpendicular to the plane $x + y - 2z = 1$

41–44 Use intercepts to help sketch the plane.

41. $2x + 5y + z = 10$

42. $3x + y + 2z = 6$

43. $6x - 3y + 4z = 6$

44. $6x + 5y - 3z = 15$

45–47 Find the point at which the line intersects the given plane.

45. $x = 3 - t$, $y = 2 + t$, $z = 5t$; $x - y + 2z = 9$

46. $x = 1 + 2t$, $y = 4t$, $z = 2 - 3t$; $x + 2y - z + 1 = 0$

47. $x = y - 1 = 2z$; $4x - y + 3z = 8$

48. Where does the line through $(1, 0, 1)$ and $(4, -2, 2)$ intersect the plane $x + y + z = 6$?

49. Find direction numbers for the line of intersection of the planes $x + y + z = 1$ and $x + z = 0$.

50. Find the cosine of the angle between the planes $x + y + z = 0$ and $x + 2y + 3z = 1$.

51–56 Determine whether the planes are parallel, perpendicular, or neither. If neither, find the angle between them.

51. $x + 4y - 3z = 1$, $-3x + 6y + 7z = 0$

52. $2z = 4y - x$, $3x - 12y + 6z = 1$

53. $x + y + z = 1$, $x - y + z = 1$

54. $2x - 3y + 4z = 5$, $x + 6y + 4z = 3$

55. $x = 4y - 2z$, $8y = 1 + 2x + 4z$

56. $x + 2y + 2z = 1$, $2x - y + 2z = 1$

57–58 (a) Find parametric equations for the line of intersection of the planes and (b) find the angle between the planes.

57. $x + y + z = 1$, $x + 2y + 2z = 1$

58. $3x - 2y + z = 1$, $2x + y - 3z = 3$

59–60 Find symmetric equations for the line of intersection of the planes.

59. $5x - 2y - 2z = 1$, $4x + y + z = 6$

60. $z = 2x - y - 5$, $z = 4x + 3y - 5$

61. Find an equation for the plane consisting of all points that are equidistant from the points $(1, 0, -2)$ and $(3, 4, 0)$.

62. Find an equation for the plane consisting of all points that are equidistant from the points $(2, 5, 5)$ and $(-6, 3, 1)$.

63. Find an equation of the plane with x-intercept a, y-intercept b, and z-intercept c.

64. (a) Find the point at which the given lines intersect:

$$\mathbf{r} = \langle 1, 1, 0 \rangle + t\langle 1, -1, 2 \rangle$$
$$\mathbf{r} = \langle 2, 0, 2 \rangle + s\langle -1, 1, 0 \rangle$$

(b) Find an equation of the plane that contains these lines.

65. Find parametric equations for the line through the point $(0, 1, 2)$ that is parallel to the plane $x + y + z = 2$ and perpendicular to the line $x = 1 + t$, $y = 1 - t$, $z = 2t$.

66. Find parametric equations for the line through the point $(0, 1, 2)$ that is perpendicular to the line $x = 1 + t$, $y = 1 - t$, $z = 2t$ and intersects this line.

67. Which of the following four planes are parallel? Are any of them identical?

P_1: $3x + 6y - 3z = 6$ P_2: $4x - 12y + 8z = 5$

P_3: $9y = 1 + 3x + 6z$ P_4: $z = x + 2y - 2$

68. Which of the following four lines are parallel? Are any of them identical?

L_1: $x = 1 + 6t$, $y = 1 - 3t$, $z = 12t + 5$

L_2: $x = 1 + 2t$, $y = t$, $z = 1 + 4t$

L_3: $2x - 2 = 4 - 4y = z + 1$

L_4: $\mathbf{r} = \langle 3, 1, 5 \rangle + t\langle 4, 2, 8 \rangle$

69–70 Use the formula in Exercise 45 in Section 12.4 to find the distance from the point to the given line.

69. $(4, 1, -2)$; $x = 1 + t$, $y = 3 - 2t$, $z = 4 - 3t$

70. $(0, 1, 3)$; $x = 2t$, $y = 6 - 2t$, $z = 3 + t$

71–72 Find the distance from the point to the given plane.

71. $(1, -2, 4)$, $3x + 2y + 6z = 5$

72. $(-6, 3, 5)$, $x - 2y - 4z = 8$

73–74 Find the distance between the given parallel planes.

73. $2x - 3y + z = 4$, $4x - 6y + 2z = 3$

74. $6z = 4y - 2x$, $9z = 1 - 3x + 6y$

75. Show that the distance between the parallel planes $ax + by + cz + d_1 = 0$ and $ax + by + cz + d_2 = 0$ is

$$D = \frac{|d_1 - d_2|}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + c^2}}$$

76. Find equations of the planes that are parallel to the plane $x + 2y - 2z = 1$ and two units away from it.

77. Show that the lines with symmetric equations $x = y = z$ and $x + 1 = y/2 = z/3$ are skew, and find the distance between these lines.

78. Find the distance between the skew lines with parametric equations $x = 1 + t$, $y = 1 + 6t$, $z = 2t$, and $x = 1 + 2s$, $y = 5 + 15s$, $z = -2 + 6s$.

79. Let L_1 be the line through the origin and the point $(2, 0, -1)$. Let L_2 be the line through the points $(1, -1, 1)$ and $(4, 1, 3)$. Find the distance between L_1 and L_2.

80. Let L_1 be the line through the points $(1, 2, 6)$ and $(2, 4, 8)$. Let L_2 be the line of intersection of the planes π_1 and π_2, where π_1 is the plane $x - y + 2z + 1 = 0$ and π_2 is the plane through the points $(3, 2, -1)$, $(0, 0, 1)$, and $(1, 2, 1)$. Calculate the distance between L_1 and L_2.

81. If a, b, and c are not all 0, show that the equation $ax + by + cz + d = 0$ represents a plane and $\langle a, b, c\rangle$ is a normal vector to the plane.
Hint: Suppose $a \neq 0$ and rewrite the equation in the form

$$a\left(x + \frac{d}{a}\right) + b(y - 0) + c(z - 0) = 0$$

82. Give a geometric description of each family of planes.
(a) $x + y + z = c$ (b) $x + y + cz = 1$
(c) $y\cos\theta + z\sin\theta = 1$

LABORATORY PROJECT **PUTTING 3D IN PERSPECTIVE**

Computer graphics programmers face the same challenge as the great painters of the past: how to represent a three-dimensional scene as a flat image on a two-dimensional plane (a screen or a canvas). To create the illusion of perspective, in which closer objects appear larger than those farther away, three-dimensional objects in the computer's memory are projected onto a rectangular screen window from a viewpoint where the eye, or camera, is located. The viewing volume––the portion of space that will be visible––is the region contained by the four planes that pass through the viewpoint and an edge of the screen window. If objects in the scene extend beyond these four planes, they must be truncated before pixel data are sent to the screen. These planes are therefore called *clipping planes*.

1. Suppose the screen is represented by a rectangle in the yz-plane with vertices $(0, \pm 400, 0)$ and $(0, \pm 400, 600)$, and the camera is placed at $(1000, 0, 0)$. A line L in the scene passes through the points $(230, -285, 102)$ and $(860, 105, 264)$. At what points should L be clipped by the clipping planes?

2. If the clipped line segment is projected on the screen window, identify the resulting line segment.

3. Use parametric equations to plot the edges of the screen window, the clipped line segment, and its projection on the screen window. Then add sight lines connecting the viewpoint to each end of the clipped segments to verify that the projection is correct.

4. A rectangle with vertices $(621, -147, 206)$, $(563, 31, 242)$, $(657, -111, 86)$, and $(599, 67, 122)$ is added to the scene. The line L intersects this rectangle. To make the rectangle appear opaque, a programmer can use *hidden line rendering,* which removes portions of objects that are behind other objects. Identify the portion of L that should be removed.